Cysteine Protease Inhibitors

Field of the invention.

This invention relates to inhibitors of cysteine proteases, especially those of the papain superfamily. The invention provides novel compounds useful in the prophylaxis or treatment of disorders stemming from misbalance of physiological proteases such as cathepsin F or S, or pathogenic proteases such as malarial falcipain.

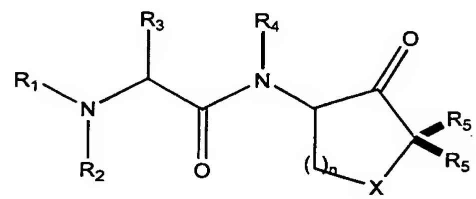
Description of the related art.

The papain superfamily of cysteine proteases are widely distributed in diverse species including mammals, invertebrates, protozoa, plants and bacteria. A number of mammalian cathepsin enzymes, including cathepsins B, F, H, K, L, N and S, have been ascribed to this superfamily, and inappropriate regulation of their activity has been implicated in a number of metabolic disorders including arthritis, muscular dystrophy, inflammation, glomerulonephritis and tumour invasion. Pathogenic cathepsin like enzymes include the bacterial gingipains, the malarial falcipains I, II, III et seq and cysteine proteases from Pneumocystis carinii, Trypanosoma cruzei and brucei, Crithidia fusiculata, Schistosoma spp.

In WO 97/40066, the use of inhibitors against Cathepsin S is described. The inhibition of this enzyme is suggested to prevent or treat disease caused by protease activity. Cathepsin S is a highly active cysteine protease belonging to the papain superfamily. Its primary structure is 57%, 41% and 45% homologous with that of the human cathepsin L and H and plant cysteine proteases papain respectively, although only 31% homologous with Cathepsin B. It is found mainly in lymph nodes, spleen, and macrophages and this limited occurrence suggests the potential involvement of this enzyme in the pathogenesis of degenerative disease. Moreover, it has been found that destruction of Ii by proteolysis is required for MHC class II molecules to bind antigenic peptides, and for transport of the resulting complex to the cell surface. Furthermore, it has been found that Cathepsin S is essential in B cells for effective Ii proteolysis necessary to render class II molecules competent for binding peptides. Therefore, the inhibition of this enzyme may be useful in modulating class II-restricting immune

response (WO 97/40066). Other disorders in which cathepsin S is implicated are chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and endometriosis.

WO 98/50533 describes the use of compounds according to the formula (I).



(I)

It is suggested the compounds of this formula, are useful as inhibitors to proteases, in particular the papain superfamily; specifically those of the Cathepsin family; and particularly Cathepsin K. The ketone bearing ring structure in these compounds has a tendency to spontaneously racemise, limiting their clinical utility. Other SKB applications describing ketone cathepsin K inhibitors include WO 98/46582, WO99/64399, WO00/29408, WO00/38687 and WO00/49011 However none of these applications disclose an α- ring substituent adjacent the linkage to the peptidomimetic chain.

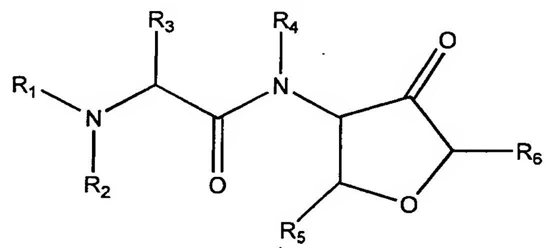
Shenai et al, J Biol. Chem. 275 37 29000-29010 describes the isolation of a major cysteine protease, denoted falcipain 2 from trophozoites of Plasmodium falciparium. The enzyme appears inter alia to hydrolyse erythrocyte haemoglobin in acidic food vacuoles. This publication also describes the isolation of the corresponding gene using an N-terminus tag, which is autocatalytically removed during folding.

SmithKline Beecham's WO 99/53039 describes the cysteine protease inhibitory activity of a diverse range of peptidomimetics on a trophozoite preparation from Plasmodium falciparium. No guidance is provided as to which cysteine protease in being inhibited. Although most of the peptidomimetics are linear structures, one compound (R,S)-3-[N-(3-benzyloxybenzoyl)-L-leucinylamino]tetrahydrofuran-4-one

belongs to the furanones of formula I depicted above. As would be expected of such structures, the ketone bearing ring is racemic.

Summary of the invention

A first aspect of the invention provides a compound according to formula (II):

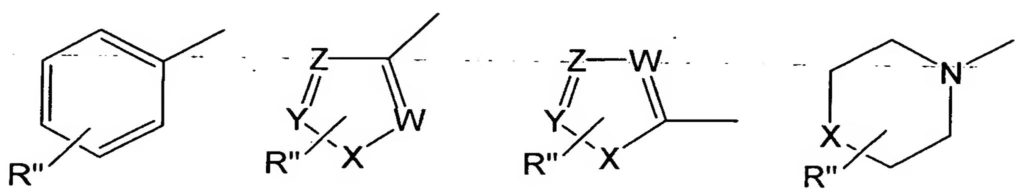


(II)

wherein:

R1 = R' , R'C(O) , R' C(S), R' SO2 , R' OC(O), R' NHC(O)

R' =



X, = O, S, NH, W, Y, Z = CH, N;

R'' = single or multiple ring substitution combinations taken from:

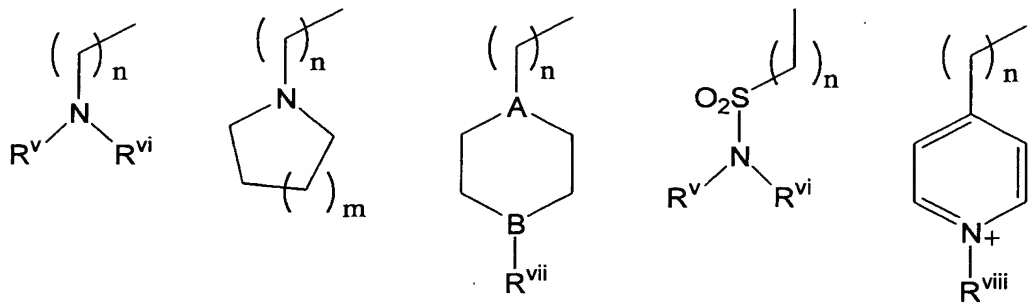
H, C1-7-alkyl, C3-6-cycloalkyl, OH, SH, Amine, Halogen;

R2, R4 = H, C1-7-alkyl, C3-7-cycloalkyl;

R3 = C1-7-alkyl, C3-7-cycloalkyl, Ar- C1-7-alkyl;

R5 = C1-7-alkyl, Halogen, Ar- C1-7-alkyl, C1-3-alkyl-CONR''', R^{iv};

R^{iv} =



where n = 1-3, m = 1-3;

R^{v}, R^{vi} = H, C1-7-alkyl;

A = N, CH;

B = N, O, S, CH;

R^{vii} = absent when B = O, S; or R^{vii} = H, C1-7-alkyl when B = N, CH;

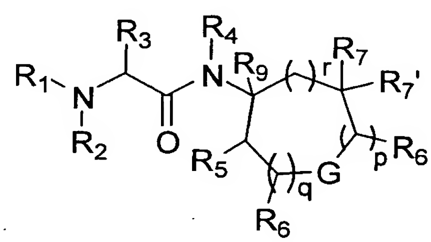
R^{viii} = O, C1-7-alkyl;

R6 = H, C1-7-alkyl, Ar- C1-7-alkyl, C1-3-alkyl-SO2-R^{ix},

C1-3-alkyl-C(O)-NHR^{ix} or CH_2XAr, where X and Ar are as defined herein;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

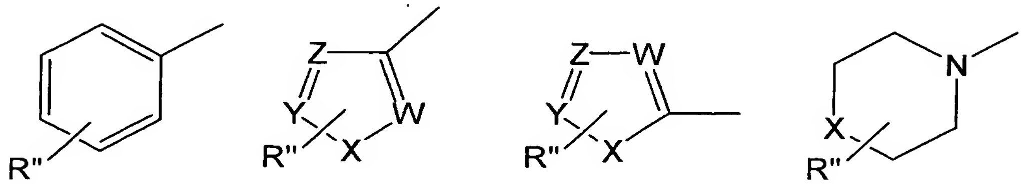
A second aspect of the invention provides novel compounds of the formula III



wherein

R1 = R' , R'C(O) , R' C(S), R' SO2 , R' OC(O), R' NHC(O)

R' =



X, = O, S, NH, W, Y, Z = CH, N;

R'' = single or multiple ring substitution combinations taken from:

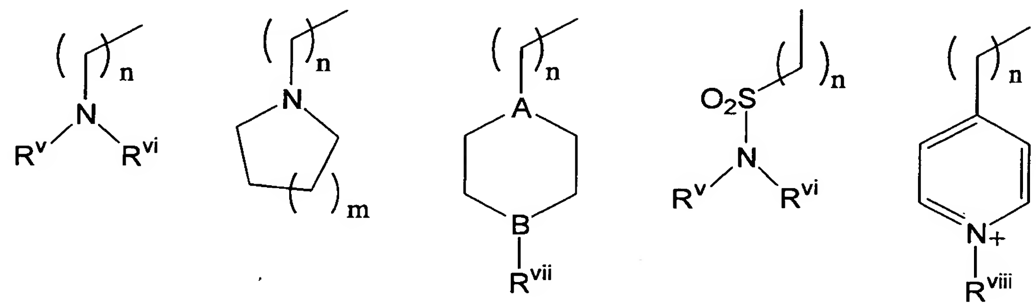
H, C1-7-alkyl, C3-6-cycloalkyl, OH, SH, amine, halogen;

R2, R4 = H, C1-7-alkyl, C3-7-cycloalkyl; C2-7alkenyl, Ar, Ar-C1-7alkyl;

R3 = C1-7-alkyl, C2-C7 alkenyl, C2-C7 alkenyl, C3-7-cycloalkyl, Ar, Ar-C1-7-alkyl,

R5 = C1-7-alkyl, halogen, Ar-C1-7-alkyl, C0-3-alkyl-CONR3R4 or R^{iv};

R^{iv} =



where n = 1-3, m = 1-3;

R^{v}, R^{vi} = H, C1-7-alkyl;

A = N, CH;

B = N, O, S, CH;

R^{vii} = absent when B = O, S; or R^{vii} = H, C1-7-alkyl when B = N, CH;

R^{viii} = O, C1-7-alkyl;

R6 = independently selected from H, C1-7-alkyl, Ar- C1-7-alkyl, C1-3-alkyl-SO2-R^{ix}, C1-3-alkyl-C(O)-NHR^{ix} or CH_2XAr;

R7 and R7' together define =O, =S, =CR8R8'; =NOR8, -O-$(CH_2)_2$-O-; -O-$(CH_2)_3$-O-; or

R7 is halo, hydroxy, or $C_{1\text{-}3}$alkoxy and R7' is H; or

R7 and R7' are both hydroxy or $C_{1\text{-}3}$alkoxy:

R8 and R8' are independently selected from H, -CN, C1-3 alkyl, C3-6 cycloalkyl, Ar, Ar-C1-7alkyl,

R9 is H or CH_3

p is 1-3; q is 0-2; r is 0-2

G is O, S, NH, CH_2

with the proviso that

if G is O, p is 1, q is 0, R7 and R7' together define =O and R9 is H; then at least one of R2-R5 is as follows:

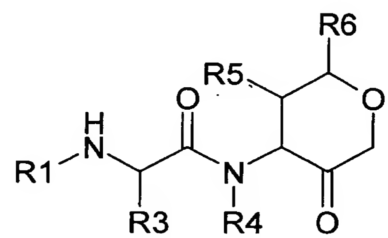
R2 or R4 is C2-7alkenyl, Ar, Ar-C1-7alkyl, spiroC3-C6alkyl; or

R3 is a sulphone containing C1-C7 alkyl or ArC1-7-alkylC2-C7 alkenyl or spiro-C3-7-cycloalkyl, Ar, or

R5 is hydroxymethyl;

The preferements for each of the variables in formula III are as for formula II.

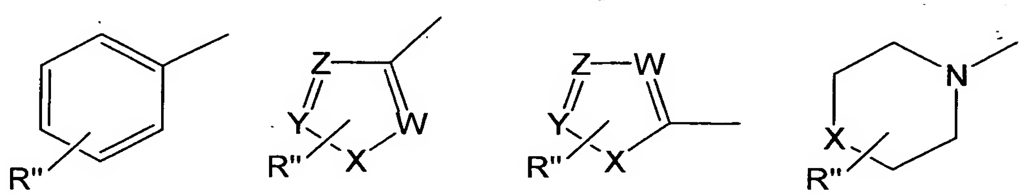
A favoured subset within formula III has the formula IV



where

R1 is R'-C(=O)- or R'-S(=O)2-

R′ is



X, = O, S, NH,

W, Y, Z = CH, N;

R'' = single or multiple ring substitution combinations taken from:

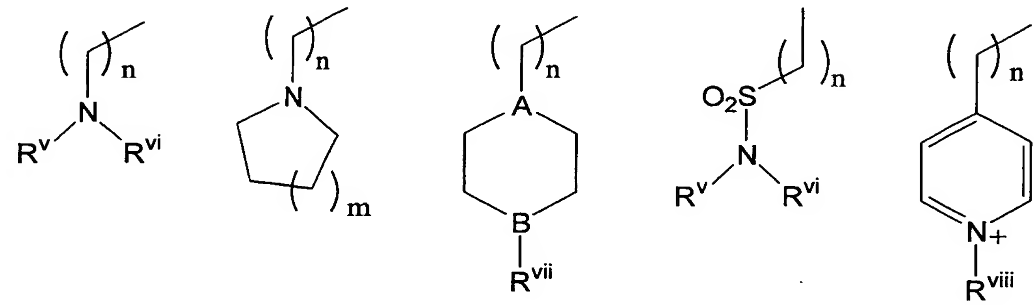
H, C1-7-alkyl, C3-6-cycloalkyl, OH, SH, amine, halogen;

R3 = C1-7-alkyl, C2-C7 alkenyl, C3-7-cycloalkyl, Ar, Ar-C1-7-alkyl;

R4 = H, C1-7-alkyl, C3-7-cycloalkyl; C2-7alkenyl, Ar, ArC1-C7-alkyl;

R5 = C1-7-alkyl, hydroxy- or halo-substituted C1-C7alkyl, halogen, Ar-C1-7-alkyl, C0-3-alkyl-CONR3R4 or R^{iv};

R^{iv} =



where n = 1-3, m = 1-3;

R^{v}, R^{vi} = H, C1-7-alkyl;

A = N, CH;

B = N, O, S, CH;

R^{vii} = absent when B = O, S; or R^{vii} = H, C1-7-alkyl when B = N, CH;

R^{viii} = O, C1-7-alkyl;

R6 = H, C1-7-alkyl, Ar-C1-7-alkyl, C1-3-alkyl-SO2-R^{ix}, C1-3-alkyl-C(O)-NHR^{ix} or CH_2XAr;

R^{ix} is C1-C7 alkyl, C3-C6 cycloalkyl or Ar-C1-C7-alkyl

'C1-7-alkyl' as applied herein is meant to include straight and branched chain aliphatic carbon chains such as methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, isobutyl, t-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, hexyl, heptyl and any simple isomers thereof. Additionally, any C1-7-alkyl may optionally be substituted by one or two halogens and/or a heteroatom S, O, NH. If the heteroatom is located at a chain terminus then it is appropriately substituted with one or 2 hydrogen atoms, for example as hydroxymethyl. An S heteroatom may be oxidised to the sulphone, especially in the case of R3 C1-7 alkyl or ArC1-7alkyl.

'C1-3-alkyl' as applied herein includes methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl, any of which may be optionally substituted as described in the paragraph above.

'Amine' includes NH2, NHC1-3-alkyl or $N(C1\text{-}3\text{-alkyl})_2$.

'Halogen' as applied herein is meant to include F, Cl, Br, I, particularly chloro and preferably fluoro.

'C3-6-cycloalkyl' (or C3-C7 cycloalkyl) as applied herein is meant to include any variation of 'C1-7-alkyl' which additionally contains a C3-6 (or C3-7) carbocyclic ring such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl. Alternatively the C3-6 or C3-7 cyclopropyl may be spiro bound to the adjacent carbon without an intervening C1-C7 alkyl.

'Ar- C1-7-alkyl' as applied herein is meant to include a phenyl, pyrazolyl, pyridyl, imidazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazinolyl, isothiazinolyl, thiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, furanyl or thienyl aromatic ring (Ar) attached through a 'C1-7-alkyl' (defined above) to the dihydro-(3H)-furanone ring system or in the case of R2, R3 or R4 linked directly to the molecule backbone. Optionally, the aromatic ring Ar may be substituted with halogen, C1-3-alkyl, OH, OC1-3-alkyl, SH, SC1-3-alkyl, amine and the like.

'C1-3-alkyl-CONR''', R^{iv}' as applied herein is meant to include straight or branched carbon chain substituted with a 1°, 2° or 3° carboxamide wherein R''', R^{iv} includes H and Me.

'C1-3-alkyl-SO_2-R^{ix}, as applied herein is meant to include straight or branched carbon chain substituted with a sulphone wherein R^{ix} includes 'C1-7-alkyl', 'Ar- C1-7-alkyl', 'C3-6-cycloalkyl'.

'C1-3-alkyl-C(O)-NHR^{ix}, as applied herein is meant to include straight or branched carbon chain substituted with a secondary carboxamide wherein R^{ix} includes 'C1-7-alkyl', 'Ar- C1-7-alkyl', 'C3-6-cycloalkyl'.

If a chiral centre is present, all isomeric forms are intended to be covered. Both (R) and (S) stereochemistries at the position corresponding to the furan 5-position (ie adjacent the linkage to the peptidomimetic chain) are encompassed by the invention with (S) being preferred in some cases, for instance with cathepsin S inhibitors. Other cysteine proteases favour the R stereoisomer at this position, such as cathepsin K and falcipain, but can accept the S.

The compounds of the invention are cysteine protease inhibitors, notably against cathepsins or cathepsin-like proteases of the papain superfamily. Ideally the compound displays selective inhibition of a single protease in the complex mixture of proteolytic enzymes characterising the physiological environment, for example a greater than 10 fold selectivity, preferably greater than 100. Most preferably inhibitory specificity is exhibited over other members of the same enzyme class or family, such as the Cathepsin family, which have a high degree of homology, as incorrect regulation of proteolytic activity can lead to unwanted pathological conditions such as hypertension, blood clotting or worse. This is especially desirable for disorders such as autoimmune disorders where administration of the drug is likely to be protracted.

However, compounds can be useful notwithstanding that they exhibit a degree of promiscuity in relation to inhibition of physiological proteases. For example the physiological functions of many cathepsins are redundant, that is inhibition of a particular cysteine protease can be compensated by the presence or upregulation of other non-inhibited proteases or alternative metabolic routes. Alternatively, treatments of short duration can result only in transient toxicity or other side effects.

The cross-specificity of cysteine proteases for a given putative inhibitor (ie the selectivity if the inhibitor) is readily ascertained with conventional enzyme and cell culture assays, for instance as depicted in the examples in relation to cathepsins S, K and L.

A further aspect of the invention comprises a method employing the compounds of formula II, III or IV for the treatment of diseases wherein cathepsin S is a factor, ie diseases or conditions alleviated or modified by inhibition of cathepsin S, preferably without substantial concomitant inhibition of other members of the papain superfamily.

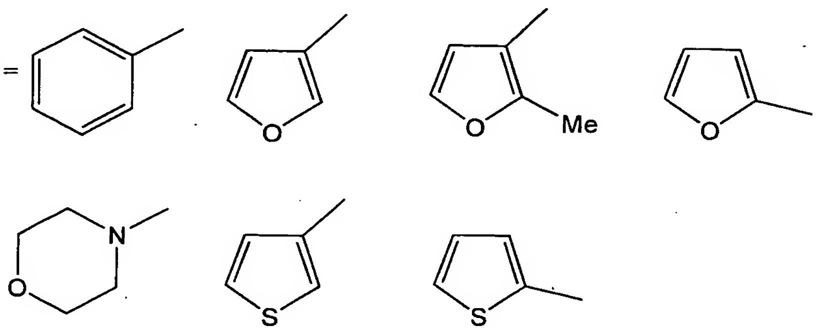
Examples of such diseases or conditions include those enumerated in WO 97/40066, such as autoimmune diseases, allergies, multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis and the like. the invention further provides the use of the compounds of formula II in therapy

and in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of diseases or conditions alleviated or moderated by inhibition of cathepsin S.

In one preferred embodiment, cathepsin S inhibitors have

R1 = R'C(O)

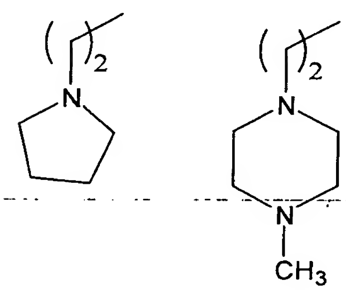
Where R' =



R2 (if present), R4 and R6 = H;

R3 = n-butyl, t-butyl, 3-(2,2-dimethylpropyl), 4-(2-methylbutyl), 4-(3,3-dimethylbutyl), 4-(3,3-dimethyl-2-methylbutyl), 4-(3-methyl-2-methylbutyl), 5-(2-methyl-3-methylpentyl), cyclohexylmethyl, cyclopentylmethyl;

R5 = CH_3, C_2H_5, CH_2Ar, CH_2CONH_2, $(CH_2)_2CONH_2$,



R6 = H, CH_2-X-Ar, where X and Ar are as defined above

or permutations thereof.

A favoured group of cathepsin S inhibitors comprises compounds otherwise as defined in the immediately preceding paragraph, wherein R5 is ethyl, propyl or hydroxymethyl. A further group of cathepsin inhibitors comprises compounds as defined in the

paragraph above, but wherein R' as phenyl bears multiple substitutions, such as C1-C7alkyl, hydroxy, halo and the like, typically at the 3 and 4 positions.

A further preferred group of cathepsin S inhibitors include the compounds of formula III wherein R1-R6 are as defined in two paragraphs immediately above and R7 and R7' together define $=CH_2$ or $O-(CH_2)_2-O-$ or $-O-(CH_2)_3-O-$.

An alternative preferred group of cathepsin S inhibitors include those wherein R1-R6 are as defined three paragraphs above, and R7 is halo, such as F, or hydroxy and R7' is H.

Preferably R9 is H.

The currently preferred value for G is oxygen. The currently preferred values for p, q and r are 1:1:0, 1:0:1, 1:1:1 and especially 1:0:0.

Additional preferred definitions for R3 in formula II, III or IV include sulphone substituted C1-7 alkyl and especially sulphone substituted Ar C1-7alkyl, such as benzylsulphonylmethyl, phenylsulphonylmethyl and phenethylsulphonylmethyl. These R3 groups are conveniently combined with the other preferred variables in the preceding six paragraphs.

A further aspect of the invention provides methods for the treatment or prophylaxis of a parasitic infection, such as a protozoal or bacterial infection, comprising the administration of a compound of formula II, III (but without the proviso) or IV, to a mammal in need thereof. A still further aspect provides a method for the control of protozoal parasites comprising the administration of a compound of formula II, III (but without the proviso) or IV, to an invertebrate vector and/or to a locus prone to infestation of such a vector.

Conveniently the protozoal or bacterial parasite is a Plasmodium, Leishmania, Schistosoma, Giardia, Entamoeba, Trypansoma, Crithidia, Pneumocystis or Porphyromonas species.

Suitably, the treatment or prophylaxis of Plasmodium falciparium comprises inhibition of a falcipain II enzyme.

Preferred R3 groups for parasite treatment and prophylaxis include 2-methylpropen-1-yl and isobutyl and benzyl, especially the enantiomers defining the side chain of L-leucine or L-phenylalanine.

A notable subset of the compounds of formula III are those wherein G is O, p is 1, q is 0, r is O, R7 and R7' together define =O and R9 is H; and wherein at least one of R2-R5 is as follows:

> if G is O, p is 1, q is 0, R7 and R7' together define =O and R9 is H; then at least one of R2-R4 is as follows:
> R2 or R4 is C2-7alkenyl, Ar, Ar-C1-7alkyl, spiroC3-C6alkyl; or
> R3 is a sulphone containing C1-7 alkyl or Ar-C1-7-alkyl, C2-C7 alkenyl, spiro-C3-7-cycloalkyl, Ar.

The remaining values for R2-R5 may be as defined in formula II, especially the preferred embodiments thereto or may comprise additional values selected from the list enumerated in this paragraph.

The compounds of the invention can form salts which form an additional aspect of the invention. Appropriate pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of Formula II include salts of organic acids, especially carboxylic acids, including but not limited to acetate, trifluoroacetate, lactate, gluconate, citrate, tartrate, maleate, malate, pantothenate, isethionate, adipate, alginate, aspartate, benzoate, butyrate, digluconate, cyclopentanate, glucoheptanate, glycerophosphate, oxalate, heptanoate, hexanoate, fumarate, nicotinate, palmoate, pectinate, 3-phenylpropionate, picrate, pivalate, proprionate, tartrate, lactobionate, pivolate, camphorate, undecanoate and succinate, organic sulphonic acids such as methanesulphonate, ethanesulphonate,

2-hydroxyethane sulphonate, camphorsulphonate, 2-napthalenesulphonate, benzenesulphonate, p-chlorobenzenesulphonate and p-toluenesulphonate; and inorganic acids such as hydrochloride, hydrobromide, hydroiodide, sulphate, bisulphate, hemisulphate, thiocyanate, persulphate, phosphoric and sulphonic acids. The compounds of Formula II, III or IV may in some cases be isolated as the hydrate.

It will be appreciated that the invention extends to prodrugs (including but not limited to ketals and hemiketals of R7/R7'), solvates, complexes and other forms releasing a compound of formula II, III or IV in vivo.

While it is possible for the active agent to be administered alone, it is preferable to present it as part of a pharmaceutical formulation. Such a formulation will comprise the above defined active agent together with one or more acceptable carriers/excipients and optionally other therapeutic ingredients. The carrier(s) must be acceptable in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not deleterious to the recipient.

The formulations include those suitable for rectal, nasal, topical (including buccal and sublingual), vaginal or parenteral (including subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous and intradermal) administration, but preferably the formulation is an orally administered formulation. The formulations may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form, e.g. tablets and sustained release capsules, and may be prepared by any methods well known in the art of pharmacy.

Such methods include the step of bringing into association the above defined active agent with the carrier. In general, the formulations are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing into association the active agent with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both, and then if necessary shaping the product. The invention extends to methods for preparing a pharmaceutical composition comprising bringing a compound of Formula II or III or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt in conjunction or association with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or vehicle. If the manufacture of pharmaceutical formulations involves intimate mixing of pharmaceutical excipients

and the active ingredient in salt form, then it is often preferred to use excipients which are non-basic in nature, i.e. either acidic or neutral.

Formulations for oral administration in the present invention may be presented as discrete units such as capsules, cachets or tablets each containing a predetermined amount of the active agent; as a powder or granules; as a solution or a suspension of the active agent in an aqueous liquid or a non-aqueous liquid; or as an oil-in-water liquid emulsion or a water in oil liquid emulsion and as a bolus etc.

With regard to compositions for oral administration (e.g. tablets and capsules), the term suitable carrier includes vehicles such as common excipients e.g. binding agents, for example syrup, acacia, gelatin, sorbitol, tragacanth, polyvinylpyrrolidone (Povidone), methylcellulose, ethylcellulose, sodium carboxymethylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, sucrose and starch; fillers and carriers, for example corn starch, gelatin, lactose, sucrose, microcrystalline cellulose, kaolin, mannitol, dicalcium phosphate, sodium chloride and alginic acid; and lubricants such as magnesium stearate, sodium stearate and other metallic stearates, glycerol stearate stearic acid, silicone fluid, talc waxes, oils and colloidal silica. Flavouring agents such as peppermint, oil of wintergreen, cherry flavouring or the like can also be used. It may be desirable to add a colouring agent to make the dosage form readily identifiable. Tablets may also be coated by methods well known in the art.

A tablet may be made by compression or moulding, optionally with one or more accessory ingredients. Compressed tablets may be prepared by compressing in a suitable machine the active agent in a free flowing form such as a powder or granules, optionally mixed with a binder, lubricant, inert diluent, preservative, surface-active or dispersing agent. Moulded tablets may be made by moulding in a suitable machine a mixture of the powdered compound moistened with an inert liquid diluent. The tablets may be optionally be coated or scored and may be formulated so as to provide slow or controlled release of the active agent.

Other formulations suitable for oral administration include lozenges comprising the active agent in a flavoured base, usually sucrose and acacia or tragacanth; pastilles comprising the active agent in an inert base such as gelatin and glycerin, or sucrose and acacia; and mouthwashes comprising the active agent in a suitable liquid carrier.

The appropriate dosage for the compounds or formulations of the invention will depend upon the indication and the patient and is readily determined by conventional animal trials. Dosages providing intracellular (for inhibition of physiological proteases of the papain superamily) concentrations of the order 0.01-100 uM, more preferably .01-10 uM, such as 0.1-5uM are typically desirable and achievable. Ex vivo or topical administration against parasites will typically involve higher concentrations.

The term "N-protecting group" or "N-protected" and the like as used herein refers to those groups intended to protect the N-terminus of an amino acid or peptide or to protect an amino group against undesirable reactions during synthetic procedures. Commonly used N-protecting groups are disclosed in Greene, "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis" (John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1981), which is hereby incorporated by reference. N-protecting groups include acyl groups such as formyl, acetyl, propionyl, pivaloyl, t-butylacetyl, 2-chloroacetyl, 2-bromoacetyl, trifluoracetyl, trichloroacetyl, phthalyl, o-nitrophenoxyacetyl, α-chlorobutyryl, benzoyl, 4-chlorobenzoyl, 4-bromobenzoyl, 4-nitrobenzoyl, and the like; sulfonyl groups such as benzenesulfonyl, p-toluenesulfonyl, and the like, carbamate forming groups such as benzyloxycarbonyl, p-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl, p-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, p-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, 2-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, p-bromobenzyloxycarbonyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, 4-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, 2-nitro-4,5-dimethoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, 3,4,5-trimethoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, 1-(p-biphenylyl)-1-methylethoxycarbonyl, α,α-dimethyl-3,5-dimethoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, benzhydryloxycarbonyl, t-butoxycarbonyl, diisopropylmethoxycarbonyl, isopropyloxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl, phenoxycarbonyl, 4-nitrophenoxycarbonyl, fluorenyl-9-methoxycarbonyl, cyclopentyloxycarbonyl, adamantyloxycarbonyl, cyclohexyloxycarbonyl, phenylthiocarbonyl, and the like; alkyl

gropus such as benzyl, triphenylmethyl, benzyloxymethyl and the like; and silyl groups such as trimethylsilyl and the like. Favoured N-protecting groups include formyl, acetyl, allyl, Fmoc, benzoyl, pivaloyl, t-butylacetyl, phenylsulfonyl, benzyl, t-butoxycarbonyl (Boc) and benzyloxycarbonyl (Cbz).

Hydroxy and/or carboxy protecting groups are also extensively reviewed in Greene ibid and include ethers such as methyl, substituted methyl ethers such as methoxymethyl, methylthiomethyl, benzyloxymethyl, t-butoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl and the like, silyl ethers such as trimethylsilyl (TMS), t-butyldimethylsilyl (TBDMS) tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, t-butyldiphenylsilyl (TBDPS), triisopropyl silyl and the like, substituted ethyl ethers such as 1-ethoxymethyl, 1-methyl-1-methoxyethyl, t-butyl, allyl, benzyl, p-methoxybenzyl, dipehenylmethyl, triphenylmethyl and the like, aralkyl groups such as trityl, and pixyl (9-hydroxy-9-phenylxanthene derivatives, especially the chloride). Ester hydroxy protecting groups include esters such as formate, benzylformate, chloroacetate, methoxyacetate, phenoxyacetate, pivaloate, adamantoate, mesitoate, benzoate and the like. Carbonate hydroxy protecting groups include methyl vinyl, allyl, cinnamyl, benzyl and the like.

Compounds are synthesised by a combination of chemistries, performed either in solution or on the solid phase. The general scheme for preparation of the furanone ring system is given in scheme 1, commencing from either a commercially available chiral aminoacid derivative or a stereoselectively prepared aminoacid, for instance from Scheme 2. Other ring systems such as pyranone are outlined in the remaining schemes.

The stereoselective synthesis detailed in Scheme 2 was adapted from Blaskovich, M.A., Evinder, G., Rose, N. G. W., Wilkinson, S., Luo, Y. and Lajoie, G. A. *J. Org. Chem*, 63, 3631-3646, 1998. The addition of Grignard reagent to compound **(10)** yielding the (R) isomer of compound **(11)** is applicable to a huge range of alternative Grignard reagents. This allows ready access to analogues of compound **(15)** by standard Grignard chemistry to produce R5 analogues embraced by formula (II). The R5 substituent confers many beneficial qualities to molecules of general formula (II, III and IV) including improvements in potency, selectivity and offers the potential to

append inhibitor molecules with a basic functionality to improve solubility and pharmacokinetic properties. Additionally, molecules of formula II, III and IV where R5 is alkyl or other substituent and not simply hydrogen show good chiral stability at the furanone (or corresponding) alpha carbon (ring position 4, C4). By chirally stable is meant that the compounds of the invention exist as a predominant stereoisomer rather than an equal mixture of stereoisomers differing in stereochemistry at C4. Preferably the compounds of the invention are greater than 90% diastereomically pure after a protracted time period.

Note particularly the presence of the substituent R5 in formula II, III and IV in comparison with the absence of any substituent in the same position in formula (I) according to WO 98/50533, WO 98 46582, WO9964399, WO0029408, WO0038687 and WO0049011.

An alternative route towards chiral β-alkyl serine aminoacids is detailed in scheme 3, commencing from D-mannitol. The addition of organocuprate reagents to the advanced oxirane intermediate **(44)** is applicable to a wide selection of reagents, giving ready access to analogues of compound **(15)** ie analogues of R5 in formula II, III or IV.

To access molecules containing potential binding elements in R6 formula (II) or (III), a number of synthetic chemistry routes are available. One example extends the basic concepts developed for the preparation of the furanone ring system depicted in schemes 1 and 8 (scheme 4). Intermediate **(51),** which can be prepared with alternative ring stereochemistries from alternative threonine isomers, provides access to the functionalities defined in R6 formula (II) or III.

An alternative route to access molecules containing potential binding elements in R6 from formula (II) or (III), is based upon transformation of a chiral sugar starting material (scheme 5). Intermediate **(59),** which can be prepared with alternative ring stereochemistries from alternative starting sugar isomers using conventional saccharide chemistry, provides access to many functionalities in R6 formula (II)) or (III).

Access to R7/R7' functionalities can go through the corresponding keto group. For instance, olefination of the ketone with Tebbe's reagent affords the exoalkene (R8 = H, R8' =H). The Tebbe reaction accomplishes methylenation in a non-basic medium and thus racemisation does not take place. Alternatively, a Wadsworth-Emmons modification of a Wittig reaction involves olefination of the ketone to afford the corresponding alkenyl nitrile (R8 = CN, R8' = H).
Other modifications carried out on the ketone functionality, including α,α-difluoronation, have employed diethylaminosulphur trifluoride (DAST) as the reagent of choice, to afford the difluoride (R7 = F, R7' =F).
Reaction of the ketone with O-alkylhydroxylamines affords a mixture of the cis and trans oximes which can be separated by chromatography (R7 and R7' =N-OR8).
Reduction of the ketone with sodium borohydride affords the corresponding alcohols (R7 =H, R7' = OH). The use of chiral reducing agents has been shown to alter the ratio of alcohols obtained. Subsequent treatment of one of the epimeric alcohols with DAST affords the corresponding fluoride with inverted stereochemistry (R7 = F, R7' = H).

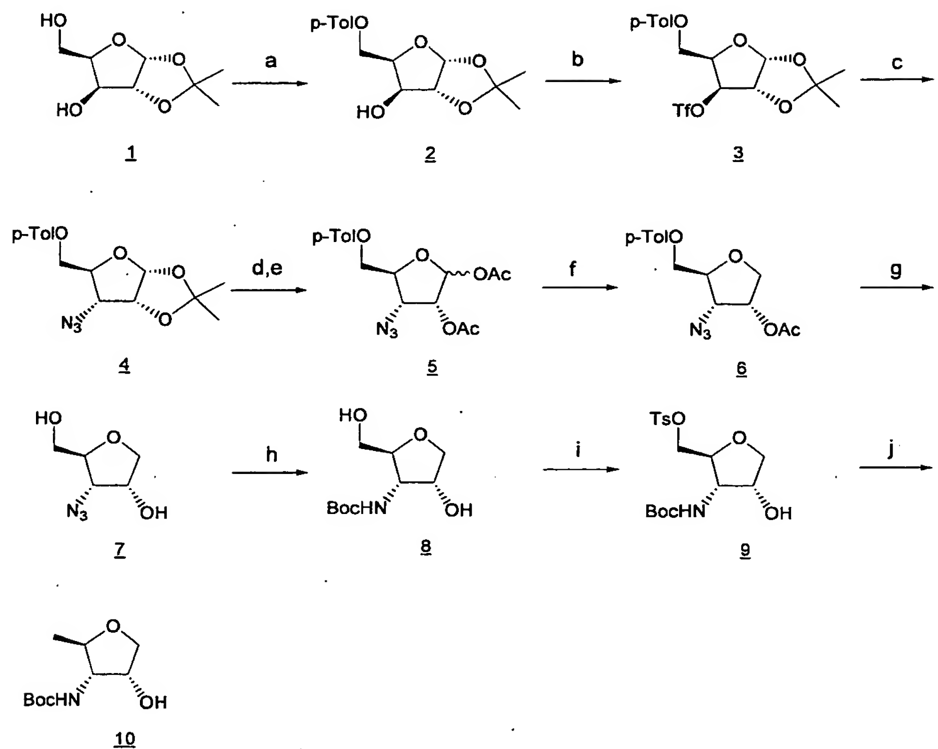
Many active inhibitors contain commercially available amino acid residues such as L-leucine, L-norleucine etc (see table 1). Alternatively, active inhibitors contain new and novel hydrophobic amino acids, which are prepared following the chemistry detailed in scheme 6. The synthesis detailed in Scheme 6 was adapted from Dexter, C. S. and Jackson, R. F. W. *Chem.Commun.* 1, 75-76, 1998, and allows ready access to analogues embraced by R3 in formula (II). The side chains of some of the novel, multiply branched alpha-amino acid building blocks exemplified herein can be thought of as hybrids of the properties of combinations of other amino acid side chains, such as those of norleucine and t-butylalanine and are thus referred to as "hybrids" in the tables. This synthesis methodology is also described in Medivir UK's copending application no GB 00 025386.4 entitled Branched Amino Acids filed in the UK patent office on 17 October 2000, the contents of which are specifically incorporated herein.

Access to sulphonyl bearing C1-C7alkyl or ArC1-C7alkyl R3 groups, for instance arylalkylC0-2sulphonylmethyl functionalities can come from the suitably protected amino acid cysteine. Mitsunobu coupling of the cysteinyl thiol with aryl alcohols such

as phenol yield the protected amino acid containing the phenylthiomethyl R3 sidechain that is readily oxidised using *m*-chloroperbenzoic acid to provide the R3 sidechain phenylsulphonylmethyl. The benzylsulphonylmethyl and phenethylsulphonylmethyl R3 sidechain containing amino acids can be prepared by nucleophilic substitution of the cysteinyl thiol with benzyl bromide and phenethyl bromide respectively. Oxidation of the resulting sulphides with *m*-chloroperbenzoic acid provides the suitably protected amino acids with the benzylsulphonylmethyl and phenethylsulphonylmethyl R3 sidechain.

The furanone or (corresponding ring) building blocks (synthesis exemplified in Schemes herein) are utilised in a solid phase synthesis of inhibitor molecules (typically 5-25mg product) detailed in Scheme 7. Alternatively, for larger scale syntheses, full preparation of inhibitors by solution phase chemistry may be performed as detailed in Scheme 8. Additional routes to R5 methyl and ethyl furanones building blocks toward inhibitors or as intermediates towards other R5 functionalities appear on Schemes 8A and 8B.

Scheme 8A

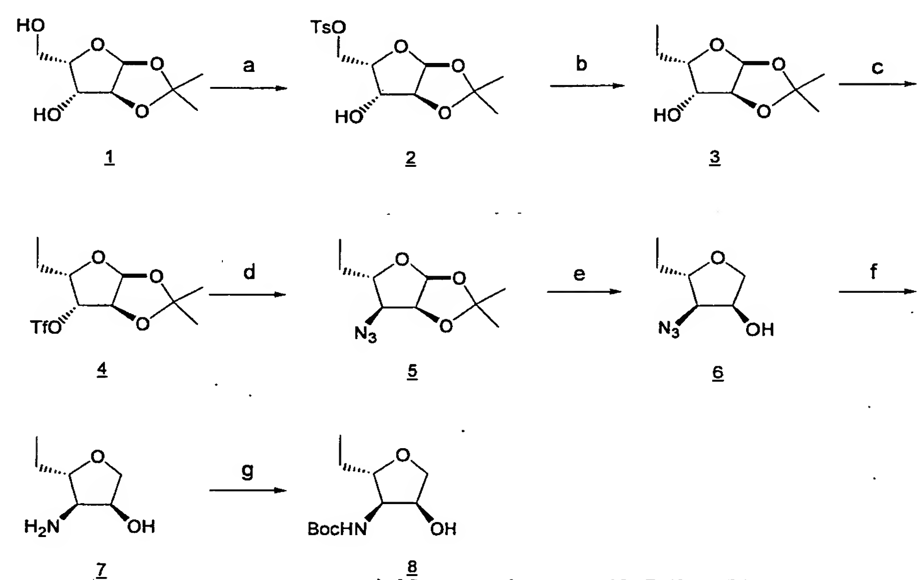


a) p-TolCl, pyridine; b) $(CF_3SO_2)_2O$, pyridine, DCM; c) NaN_3, DMF; d) 75% HCOOH; e) Ac_2O, pyridine; f) TMSOTf, Et_3SiH; g) K_2CO_3, MeOH; h) H_2, 10% Pd/C, MeOH, Boc_2O; i) TsCl, pyridine; j) $LiAlH_4$, Et_2O

An alternative synthesis of methyl furanones is shown in Scheme 8A. 1,2-Isopropylidene-D-xylofuranoside 1-Scheme-8A is first converted to the p-toluoyl ester 2-Scheme-8A with p-toluoyl chloride and pyridine. The secondary alcohol 2-Scheme-8A may be converted to the triflate 3-Scheme-8A. The triflate 3-Scheme-8A may be displaced with sodium azide to provide the corresponding azide 4-Scheme-8A. Deprotection of the 1,2-isopropylidene of 4-Scheme-8A and subsequent acetylation of the residue provides diacetate 5-Scheme-8A. Reduction of the anomeric centre of 5-Scheme-8A with trimethylsilyl triflate and triethylsilane provides monoacetate 6-Scheme-8A. Removal of the two ester groups from 6-Scheme-8A with potassium carbonate affords alcohol 7-Scheme-8A. Reduction of the azide 7-Scheme-8A in the presence of Boc anhydride affords the key intermediate furanol 8-Scheme-8A. Furanol 8-Scheme-8A can be transformed to the methyl furanol 10-Scheme-8A by converting the primary alcohol functionality of 8-Scheme-8A to the tosylate 9-Scheme-8A, which

in turn can be reduced with lithium aluminium hydride to provide the methyl furanol 10-Scheme-8A. As described herein, furanol 10-Scheme-8A can be used to build up inhibitors of the invention in solution or on solid phase. Solid phase chemistry would typically require conversion of the Boc protection to Fmoc chemistry. The ultimate synthetic step involves oxidation of the furanol functionality to the corresponding furanone using an oxidant such as Dess-Martin periodinane. Alternatively, the oxidation may be carried out prior to subsequent modifications at the N-terminus. Importantly, furanol 8-Scheme-8A also provides an opportunity for introduction of diverse functionality at C-5 as the hydroxmethylene can be used for subsequent transformations known to those skilled in the art.

Scheme 8B



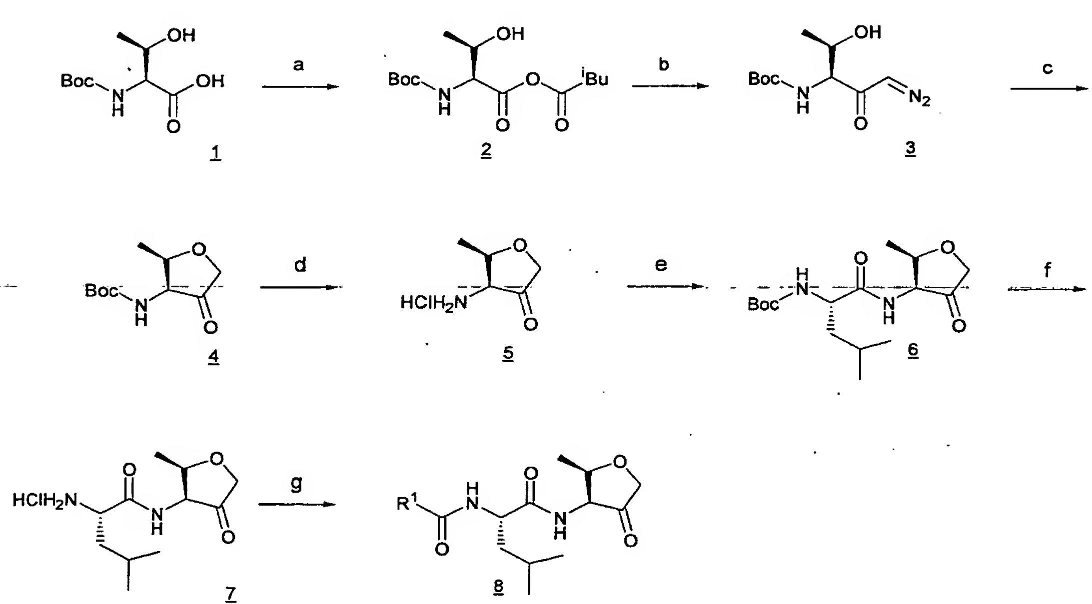
a) TsCl, pyridine; b) Me_2CuLi, Et_2O,THF; c) $(CF_3SO_2)_2O$, pyridine, DCM; d) NaN_3, DMF; e) TMSOTf, Et_3SiH; f) H_2, 10% Pd/C, MeOH; g) Boc_2O

An alternative synthesis of ethyl furanones is shown in Scheme 8B. 1,2-Isopropylidene-L-xylofuranoside 1-Scheme-8B is used as the starting material and is first converted to the tosylate 2-Scheme-8B. The tosylate 2-Scheme-8B is readily displaced using cuprate chemistry to provide the ethyl furanoside 3-Scheme-8B. The secondary alcohol 3-Scheme-8B may be converted to the triflate 4-Scheme-8B using triflic anhydride and pyridine. The triflate 4-Scheme-8B may be displaced with sodium

azide to provide the corresponding azide 5-Scheme-8B. Reduction of the anomeric centre of 5-Scheme-8B with trimethylsilyl triflate and triethylsilane provides alcohol 6-Scheme-8B. Reduction of the azide 6-Scheme-8B with hydrogen in the presence of 10% palladium on carbon provides amine 7-Scheme-8B. Protection of the amine 7-Scheme-8B with Boc anhydride provides the ethyl furanol 8-Scheme-8B. As described previously, furanol 8-Scheme-8B can be used to build up potential inhibitors in solution or on solid phase. Solid phase chemistry would require conversion of the Boc protection to Fmoc chemistry. The ultimate synthetic step involves oxidation of the furanol functionality to the corresponding furanone using an oxidant such as Dess-Martin periodinane. Alternatively, the oxidation may be carried out prior to subsequent modifications at the N-terminus.

Compounds of the invention with other values for G, p, q and r in Formula III can be accessed as ilustrated below with reference to schemes 9-13.

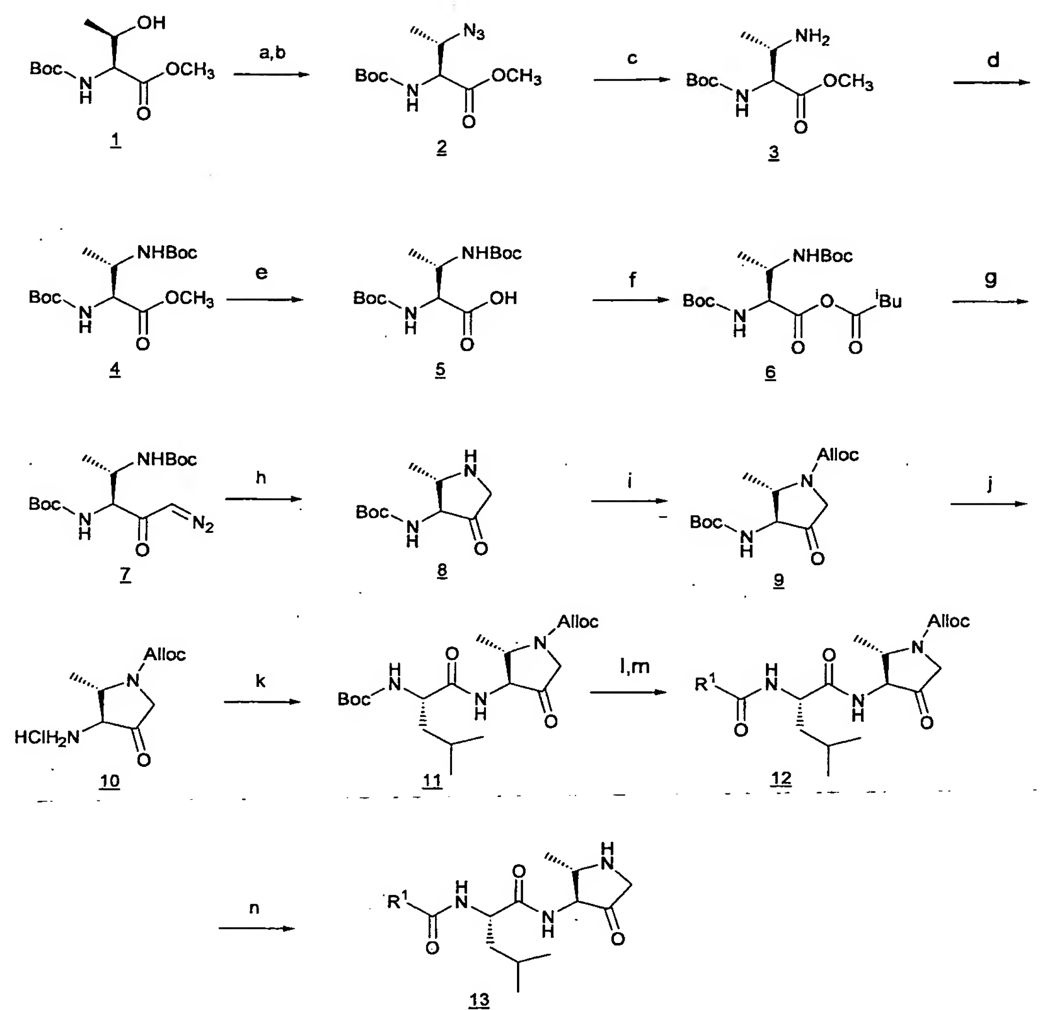
Scheme 9



a) ^{i}BuOCOCl, NMM; b) diazomethane in Et_2O; c) LiCl (10eq) in 80 % acetic acid; d) 4M HCl in dioxane; e) Boc-Leu-Opfp, HOBt, NMM, DMF; f) 4M HCl in dioxane; g) R^1 capping group eg benzoic acid, HBTU, HOBt, NMM, DMF.

Compounds of the general formula (III), wherein p is 1, q = 0, r = 0 and G = O are prepared by methods shown in Scheme 9. Activation of the known Boc-aminoacid 1-Scheme-9 with isobutyl chloroformate and 4-methylmorpholine provides 2-Scheme-9. Subsequent treatment of 2-Scheme-9 with diazomethane provides the diazoketone 3-Scheme-9. Cyclization of diazoketone 3-Scheme-9 can be effected by lithium chloride/aqueous acetic acid to give the dihydro-3(2H)-furanone 4-Scheme-9. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed from 4-Scheme-9, by treatment with acid, and provides the amine salt 5-Scheme-9. The amine salt 5-Scheme-9 may be coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with a pentafluorophenol derivative in the presence of HOBT and NMM, to provide the amide 6-Scheme-9. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed from 6-Scheme-9 by treatment with an acid, such as hydrogen chloride in dioxane, to provide the amine salt 7-Scheme-9. The amine salt 7-Scheme-9 may be coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with an acid in the presence of HBTU and HOBT, to provide the amide 8-Scheme-9.

Scheme 10

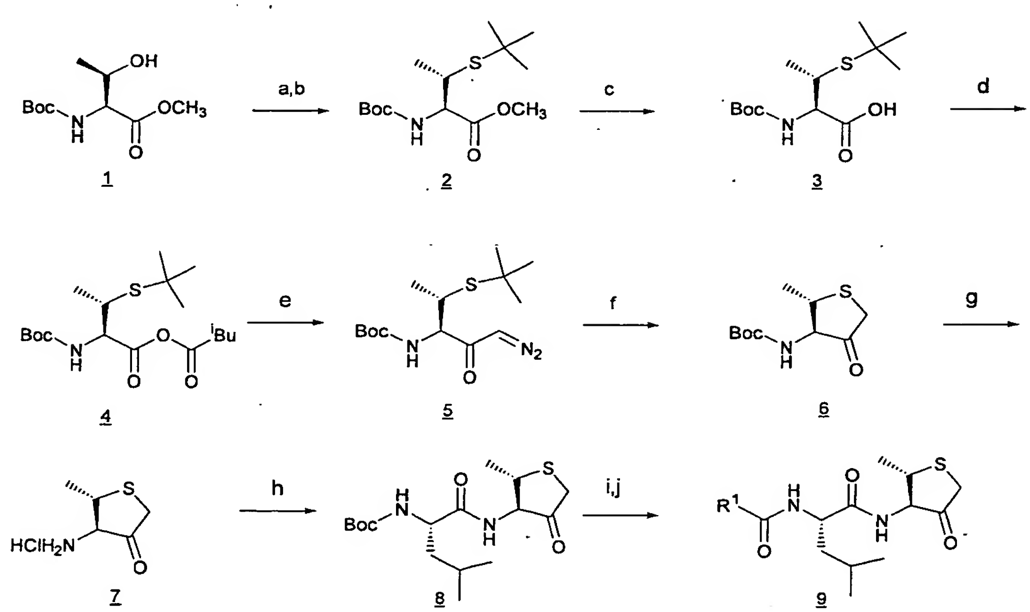


a) TsCl, pyridine; b) NaN_3; c) 10% Pd on carbon, H_2; d) Boc_2O; e) LiOH in THF/H_2O; f) $^{i}BuOCOCl$, NMM; g) diazomethane in Et_2O; h) LiCl (10eq) in 80 % acetic acid; i) Alloc-Cl, pyridine; j) 4M HCl in dioxane; k) Boc-Leu-Opfp, HOBt, NMM, DMF; l) 4M HCl in dioxane; m) R^1 capping group eg benzoic acid, HBTU, HOBt, NMM, DMF; n) $(Ph_3P)_4Pd$, $CHCl_3$, AcOH, NMM.

Compounds of the general formula (III), wherein p is 1, q = 0, r = 0, and G = NH are prepared by methods shown in Scheme 10. Treatment of the known Boc-methyl ester 1-Scheme-10 with tosyl chloride and pyridine provides the corresponding tosylate which on treatment with sodium azide provides the azide 2-Scheme-10. Reduction of the azide 2-Scheme-10 utilising methods that are known in the art, such as reduction with palladium on carbon in ethanol under an atmosphere of hydrogen, provides the amine 3-Scheme-10. Protection of the amine 3-Scheme-10 with di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate provides 4-Scheme-10. Hydrolysis of the ester 4-Scheme-10 with lithium

hydroxide provides the acid 5-Scheme-10. Activation of the acid 5-Scheme-10 with isobutyl chloroformate and 4-methylmorpholine provides 6-Scheme-10. The activated ester 6-Scheme-10 may be treated with diazomethane to provide the diazoketone 7-Scheme-10. Cyclization of diazoketone 7-Scheme-10 can be effected by lithium chloride/aqueous acetic acid to give the dihydro-3(2H)-furanone 8-Scheme-10. Orthogonal protection of the secondary amine 8-Scheme-10 can be effected with allyl chloroformate and pyridine to provide 9-Scheme-10. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl protecting group may be removed from 9-Scheme-10, by treatment with acid to provide the amine salt 10-Scheme-10. Amine salt 10-Scheme-10 can subsequently be coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with a pentafluorophenol derivative in the presence of HOBT and NMM, to provide the amide 11-Scheme-10. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed from 11-Scheme-10 by treatment with an acid and the amine salt subsequently coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with an acid in the presence of HBTU and HOBT, to provide the amide 12-Scheme-10. Removal of the N-Alloc group may be achieved with palladium(0) and acid to provide 13-Scheme-10.

Scheme 11

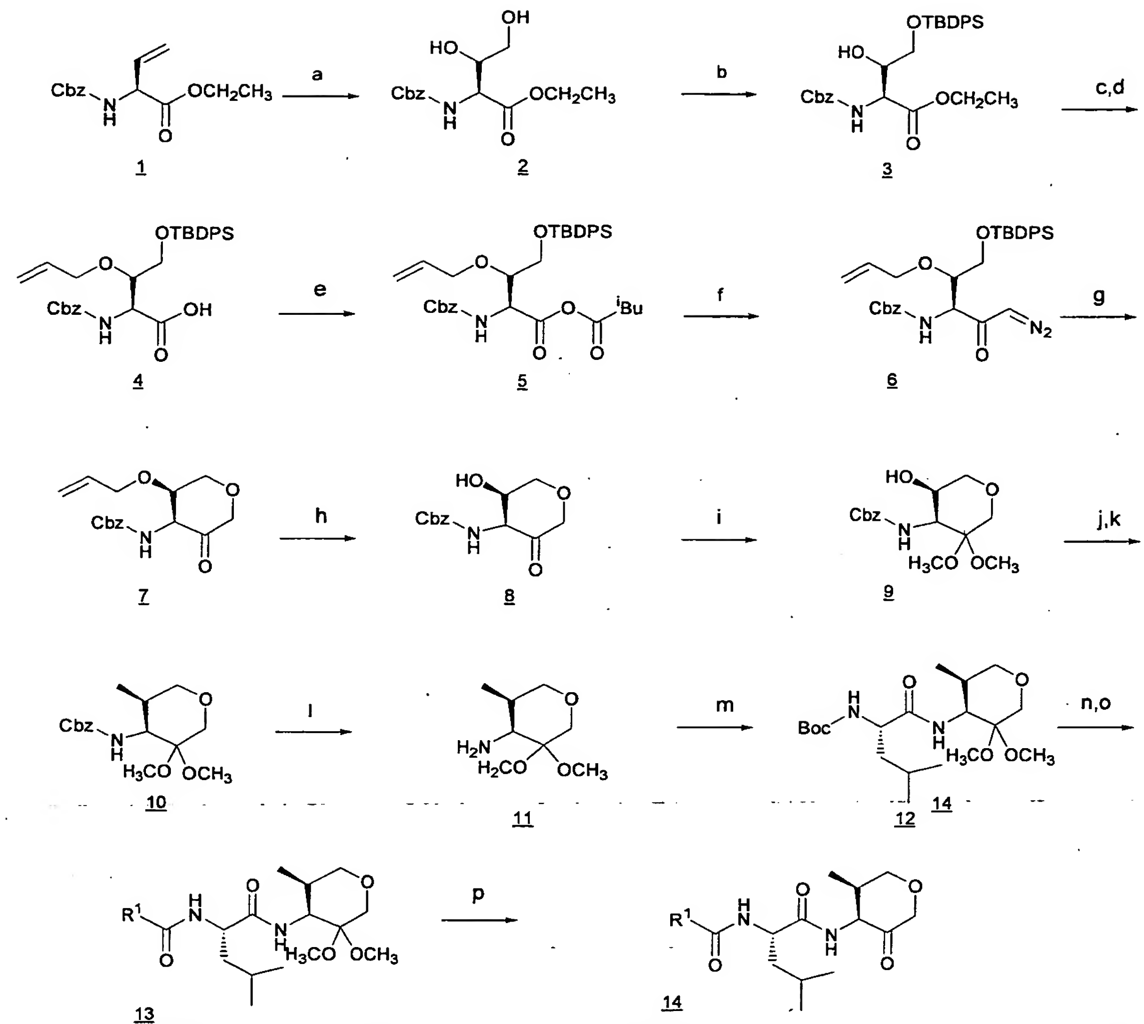


a) TsCl, pyridine; b) *tert*-butylmercaptan; c) LiOH in THF/H_2O; d) $^iBuOCOCl$, NMM; e) diazomethane in Et_2O; f) LiCl (10eq) in 80 % acetic acid; g) 4M HCl in dioxane; h)

Boc-Leu-Opfp, HOBt, NMM, DMF; i) 4M HCl in dioxane; j) R^1 capping group eg benzoic acid, HBTU, HOBt, NMM, DMF.

Compounds of the general formula (III), wherein p is 1, q =0, r = 0 and G = S are prepared by methods shown in Scheme 11. Treatment of the known Boc-methyl ester 1-Scheme-11 with tosyl chloride in pyridine provides the tosylate, which on treatment with *tert*-butylmercaptan provides the sulphide 2-Scheme-11. Hydrolysis of the ester 2-Scheme-11 utilising methods that are known in the art, such as base hydrolysis with lithium hydroxide, provides the acid 3-Scheme-11. Activation of the acid 3-Scheme-11 with isobutyl chloroformate and 4-methylmorpholine provides 4-Scheme-11. Subsequent treatment of 4-Scheme-11 with diazomethane provides the diazoketone 5-Scheme-11. Cyclization of diazoketone 5-Scheme-11 can be effected by lithium chloride/aqueous acetic acid to give the dihydro-3(2H)-furanone 6-Scheme-11. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed from 6-Scheme-11, by treatment with acid to provide 7-Scheme-11. The amine salt 7-Scheme-11 may be coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with a pentafluorophenol derivative in the presence of HOBT and NMM, to provide the amide 8-Scheme-11. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed from 8-Scheme-11 by treatment with an acid, such as hydrogen chloride in dioxane and the amine salt subsequently coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with an acid in the presence of HBTU and HOBT, to provide the amide 9-Scheme-11.

Scheme 12

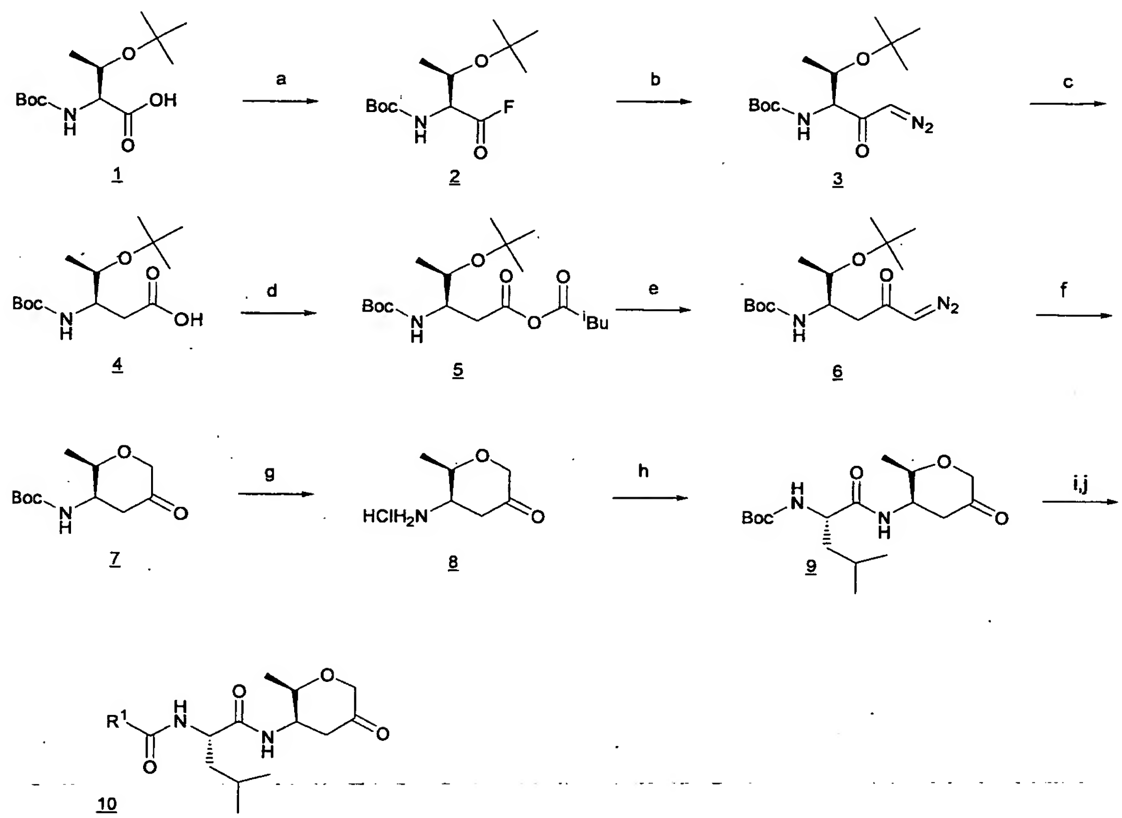


a) OsO_4, NMM; b) TBDPSCl, imidazole, DMF/CH_2Cl_2; c) allyl bromide, TBAF, Bu_2SnO; d) LiOH in THF/H_2O; e) $^iBuOCOCl$, NMM; f) diazomethane in Et_2O; g) LiCl (10eq) in 80 % acetic acid; h) $(Ph_3P)_4Pd$, $CHCl_3$, AcOH, NMM; i) $(MeO)_3CH$, *p*-toluenesulphonic acid, MeOH; j) TsCl, pyridine; k) $Me_2CuCNLi_2$; l) 10 % Pd on carbon, H_2; m) Boc-Leu-Opfp, HOBt, NMM, DMF; n) 4M HCl in dioxane; o) R^1 capping group eg benzoic acid, HBTU, HOBt, NMM, DMF; p) TFA, $NaHCO_3$

Compounds of the general formula (III), wherein p is 1, q = 1, r = 0 and G = O (ie corresponding to formula IV where q=1) are prepared by methods shown in Scheme 12. Treatment of the known Cbz-ethyl ester 1-Scheme-12 with osmium tetroxide and 4-methylmorpholine provides the diol 2-Scheme-12. Protection of the primary alcohol may be effected with *tert*-butyldiphenylsilylchloride and imidazole to provide 3-Scheme-12. Protection of the secondary alcohol 3-Scheme-12 may be achieved with

allyl bromide and subsequent base hydrolysis of the ethyl ester provides 4-Scheme-12. Activation of the acid 4-Scheme-12 may be achieved with isobutyl chloroformate and 4-methylmorpholine to provide 5-Scheme-12. Subsequent treatment of 5-Scheme-12 with diazomethane provides the diazoketone 6-Scheme-12. Cyclization of diazoketone 6-Scheme-12 can be effected by lithium chloride/aqueous acetic acid to give the 3-pyranone 7-Scheme-12. The allyl protection may be removed from 7-Scheme-12, by treatment with palladium(0) and acid, to provide alcohol 8-Scheme-12. Ketal formation from ketone 8-Scheme-12 may be effected by treatment with trimethylorthoformate and *p*-toluenesulphonic acid to provide 9-Scheme-12. Conversion of the alcohol 9-Scheme-12 to the methyl derivative 10-Scheme 12 can be achieved utilising methods that are known in the art, such as tosylation with tosylchloride and pyridine, with subsequent reaction with the higher order cuprate prepared from methyl lithium. Removal of the Cbz protecting group from 10-Scheme 12 may be achieved with 10% Pd on carbon in the presence of hydrogen to provide 11-Scheme-12. The amine 11-Scheme-12 can be coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with a pentafluorophenol derivative in the presence of HOBT and NMM, to provide the amide 12-Scheme-12. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed by treatment with an acid, such as hydrogen chloride in dioxane and the amine salt subsequently coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with an acid in the presence of HBTU and HOBT, to provide the amide 13-Scheme-12. Removal of the ketal functionality from 13-Scheme-12 may be achieved with trifluoroacetic acid in the presence of sodium hydrogen carbonate to provide 14-Scheme-12.

Scheme 13



a) DAST, Et_3N; b) CH_2N_2 in CH_2Cl_2 c) $PhCO_2Ag$, aqueous 1,4-dioaxane; d) $^iBuOCOCl$, NMM; e) diazomethane in Et_2O; f) LiCl (10eq) in 80 % acetic acid; g) 4M HCl in dioxane; h) Boc-Leu-Opfp, HOBt, NMM, DMF; i) 4M HCl in dioxane; j) R^1 capping group eg benzoic acid, HBTU, HOBt, NMM, DMF.

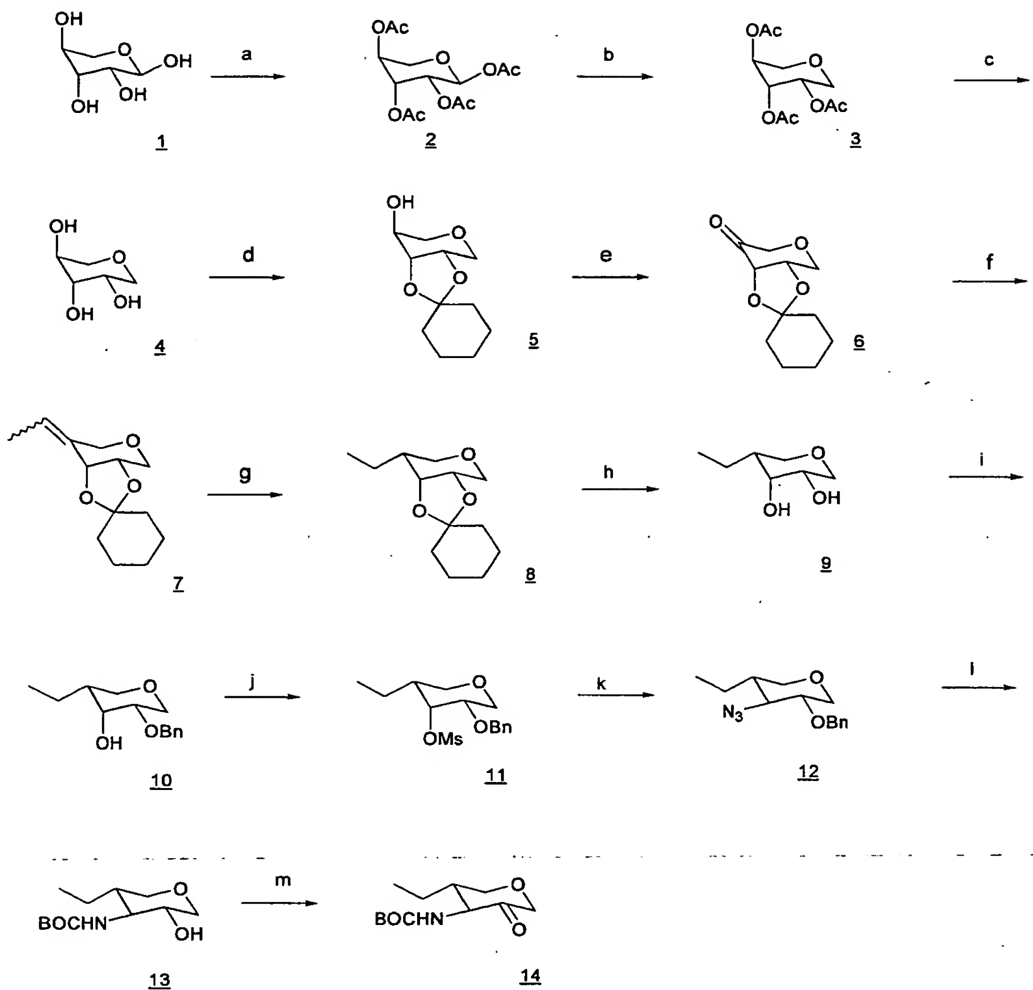
Compounds of the general formula (III), wherein p is 1, q = 0, r = 1 and G = O are prepared by methods shown in Scheme 13. Treatment of Boc-amino acid 1-Scheme-13 with diethylamino sulphur trifluoride in the presence of base provides the acid fluoride 2-Scheme-13. Homologation of the acid by methods known in the art, such as Arndt-Eistert methodology may be used. Treatment of the amino-acylfluoride 2-Scheme-13 with diazomethane provides the diazoketone 3-Scheme-13. Wolff rearrangement of diazoketone 3-Scheme-13 with silver benzoate provides the acid 4-Scheme-13. Activation of the acid 4-Scheme-13 with isobutyl chloroformate and 4-methylmorpholine provides 5-Scheme-13. Subsequent treatment of 5-Scheme-13 with diazomethane provides the diazoketone 6-Scheme-13. Cyclization of diazoketone 6-Scheme-13 can be effected by lithium chloride/aqueous acetic acid to give the 3-pyranone 7-Scheme-13. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed from 7-

Scheme-13 by treatment with acid, and provides the amine salt 8-Scheme-13. The amine salt 8-Scheme-13 may be coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with a pentafluorophenol derivative in the presence of HOBT and NMM, to provide the amide 9-Scheme-13. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed from 9-Scheme-13 by treatment with an acid, such as hydrogen chloride in dioxane, to provide the amine salt which may be coupled with a carboxylic acid by methods that are known in the art, such as coupling with an acid in the presence of HBTU and HOBT, to provide the amide 10-Scheme-13.

Although schemes 9-13 have been illustrated by reference to particular R1-R4 values, it will be appreciated that the methodology is more generally applicable to precursors bearing the other claimed values in these positions, where necessary in conjunction with conventional protection of functionalities on R1-R4. Similarly other values for R5 and R6 can be accessed analogously to schemes 1-8.

Compounds of general formula IV are additionally conveniently prepared by schemes 14-16:

Scheme 14



a) pyridine, acetic anhydride; b) triethylsilane, trimethylsilyl triflate; c) sodium methoxide, methanol; d) cyclohexanone diethylacetal; e) Swern oxidation; f) PPh_3CHCH3, THF; g) H_2, palladium on carbon, sodium bicarbonate; h) 80% aqueous acetic acid; i) sodium hydride, benzyl bromide; j) mesyl chloride, pyridine; k) sodium azide, DMF; l) H_2, palladium on carbon, di-(*tert*-butyloxy)carbonyl; m) Dess-Martin periodinane

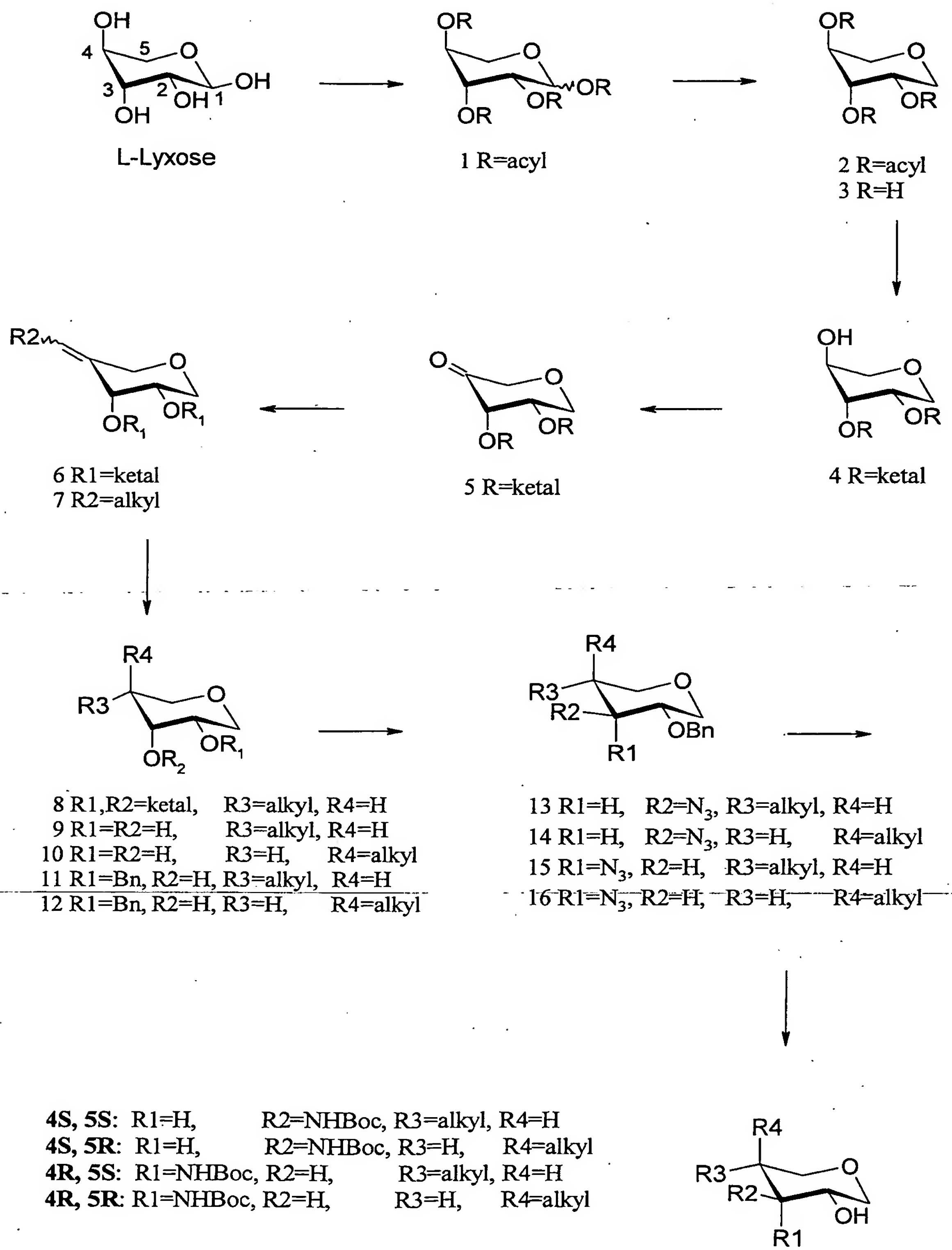
Lyxose 1-scheme-14 can be peracetylated to give 2-scheme-14 with acetic anhydride in pyridine at room temperature overnight. Reduction at the anomeric centre to afford 3-scheme-14 may be achieved using triethylsilane in the presence of trimethylsilyl triflate. Hydrolysis of the triacetate 3-scheme-14 affords 4-scheme-14 whereupon the vicinal diol can be protected as the cyclohexanone acetal 5-scheme-14. Swern oxidation of the unprotected alcohol functionality gives 6-scheme-14, a key

intermediate for the introduction of the required C5 pyranone substitution. Ethyl substitution is achieved here by treatment with ethyl triphenylphosphonium bromide with potassium *tert*-butoxide in THF at $0^{o}C$ to produce 7-scheme-14. Hydrogenation of 7-scheme-14 in ethyl acetate with sodium bicarbonate gives the ethyl derivative 8-scheme-14 with the stereochemistry shown. Deprotection of the cyclohexanone acetal 8-scheme-14 can be achieved with aqueous acetic acid overnight to afford the diol 9-scheme-14. Selective benzylation of the equatorial hydroxyl group gives 10-scheme-14, which can then be mesylated using mesyl chloride in pyridine at $50^{o}C$ to produce 11-scheme-14. Azide displacement of mesylate anion using sodium azide in DMF at $80^{o}C$ affords 12-scheme-14, from which the pyranol 13-scheme-14 can be obtained by hydrogenolysis in the presence of BOC-anhydride. Oxidation to the pyranone 14-scheme-14 is achieved using the Dess-Martin periodinane.

In scheme 14, the C5 substitution is introduced using Wittig chemistry followed by hydrogenation, in this case compound 6-scheme-14 is converted to the C5 ethyl derivative 8-scheme-14 Alternative C5 substitution can be achieved using this route. For example, alternative Wittig or Horner-Emmons chemistry will lead to different alkyl substituents. In an analogous manner, the C5 hydroxymethyl group can be prepared and this itself can be further derivatised to other groups such as halogen, amino and other basic groups and sulfhydryl.

A general methodology starting from L-lyxose has been established for the preparation of various 5-substituted 4-amino 3-hydroxy pyranols with all four possible combinations of configuration at position 4 and 5 *i.e.* 4S,5S; 4S,5R; 4R,5S and 4R,5R. This methodology is exemplified in Scheme 14A immediately below. The pyranols can then be N-terminal extended, capped and subsequently oxidised to the keto compounds for example by Dess Martin periodination.

General pyranose structures



L-lyxose can be acylated with a suitable acylating agent such as acid anhydride, acyl halide in an organic solvent like pyridine or other mixed organic solvents, to give the peracylated compound 1-scheme-X. This compound can then be subjected to anomeric reduction with a trialkyl silane together with a Lewis acid such as triethyl silane and trimethylsilyl trifluormethanesulphonate. Transforming the compound into the corresponding halo-, sulpho- or thiocarbo-glycoside followed by a radical reduction, using known methodology, can also bring about the anomeric reduction. Deacylation under basic condition provides the triol 3-scheme-14A, which can be selectively protected on the 2,3-hydroxylgroups forming a ketal 4-scheme14A by using standard protecting group methodology. Oxidation of the 4-OH group into the keto function 5-scheme-14A can be performed with the Swern procedure, Dess-Martin or any other suitable oxidation method. Various 4-substituted alkenes 6-scheme-14A can be achieved by using appropriate Wittig reagents for example triphenylalkylphosphonium halide or triphenylalkylarylphosphonium halide together with a base. Catalytic hydrogenation of the wittig product in the presence of a buffer provides predominantly compound 8-scheme-14A. Alternatively, the compound with the other configuration at this position 10-scheme-14A can be obtained by removal of the ketal protecting group prior to the hydrogenation. The alkene compound can also be subjected to hydroboration, which will introduce a hydroxyl group, suitable for further modifications.

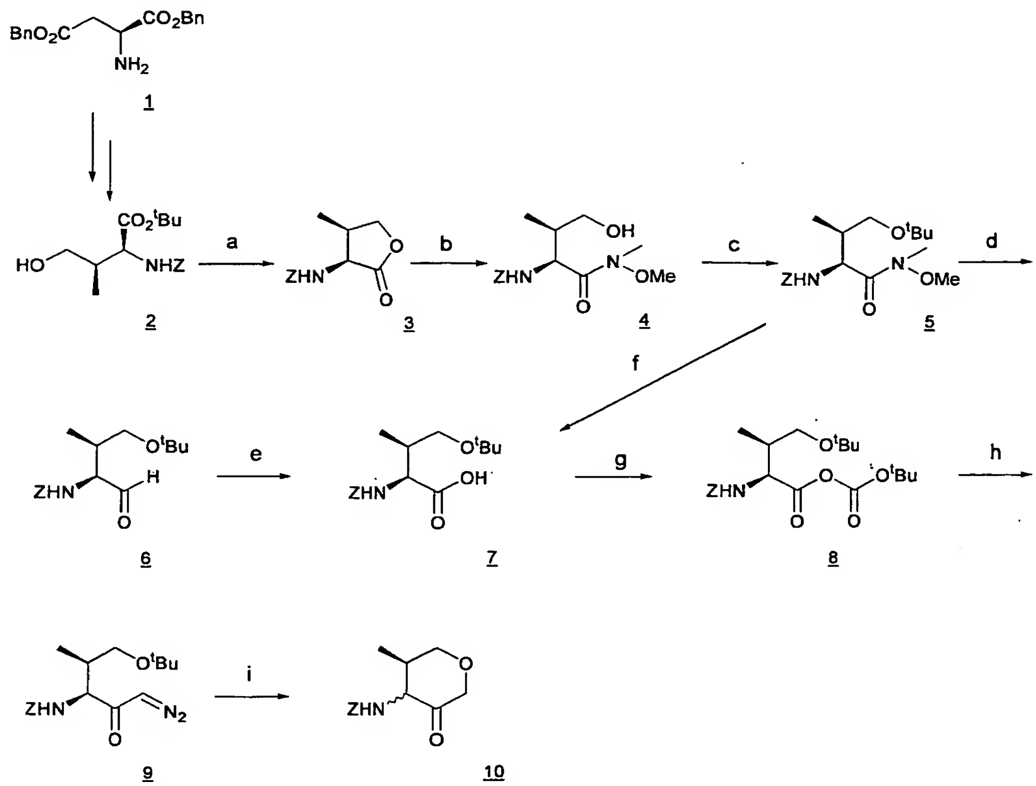
Another possibility to achieve the 4-alkyl compounds is to transform the 4-OH group into a leaving group for example a sulphonate followed by displacement by a cuprous or Grignard reagent of the desired alkylgroup.

The ketal protecting group can be removed under acidic conditions such as 1M HCl/THF 1:1 at room temperature or heating to 80 °C in aqueous acetic acid which will give the diol 8-scheme-14A. Selective protection of the 2-OH group with an alkylating agent such as benzyl halide or any other similar reagent in the presence of a base can give exclusively or predominantly the 2-*O*-protected compound 11,12-scheme-14A. The 3-OH can be converted to a suitable leaving group such as a sulphonate, which subsequently can be displaced by an azide 13,14-scheme-14A. Alternatively, a Mitsunobu reaction can be used to produce the azide-substituted compound. Hydrogenation of the azide-compound in the presence of a carbamoylating

agent like di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate provides the desired 1,5-anhydro-3-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,4-dideoxy-4-ethyl-D-xylitol and 1,5-anhydro-3-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-2,3-dideoxy-2-ethyl-L-arabinitol.

The series of compounds with the other configuration at carbon 3 can be prepared by inversion of the configuration of the 3-OH in compound <u>11,12-scheme-14A</u> by methods that are known in the art, followed by the above procedure *i.e.* putting on a leaving group and azide displacement. They can also be prepared by the following sequence. Oxidation of the 3-OH into a ketone, using the oxidation reagents previously described, transformation of the ketone into an oxime, utilising reagents such as benzyloxyamine halide and finally reduction of the oxime into the aminofunction. This will provide a mixture of the compounds with the two different configurations, which can be separated using known methodology. Boc-protection of the aminogroup and reductive removal of the benzyl protecting group provides the compounds with the remaining two configurations 4R,5S and 4R,5R. The diol is oxidised prior to N-cap extension (as described herein) by procedures such as Dess Martin. Alternatively the diol can be N-terminal extended and capped before being oxidised to the corresponding pyranone.

Scheme 15

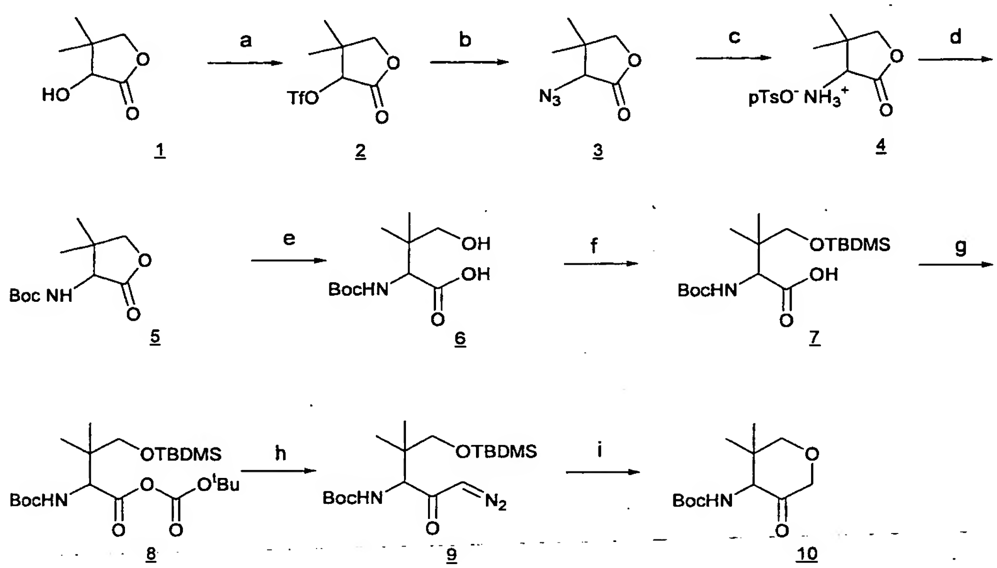


a) TFA; b) Me_3Al, HCl.HNMe(OMe), DCM; c) $CCl_3(NH)O^tBu$, $BF_3.Et_2O$, DCM, cyclohexane; d) LAH in Et_2O; e) ^tBuOH, 2-methyl-2-butene, $NaClO_2$, NaH_2PO_4, H_2O; f) ^tBuOK, Et_2O, H_2O; g) $^iBuOCOCl$, NMM, THF; h) diazomethane in Et_2O; i) LiCl (10eq) in 80 % acetic acid.

Compounds of the general formula (IV) are alternatively prepared by methods shown in Scheme 15. Alcohol <u>2-Scheme-15</u> can be prepared following the literature procedure reported by J. E. Baldwin *et al* (Tetrahedron, 1995, 51 (43), 11581). Removal of the ester functionality from <u>2-Scheme-15</u> can be achieved trifluoroacetic acid to provide the lactone <u>3-Scheme-15</u>. Lactone <u>3-Scheme-15</u> can be ring opened by MeONHMe in the presence of Me_3Al to provide the alcohol <u>4-Scheme-15</u>. The *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group may be introduced onto alcohol <u>4-Scheme-15</u> to provide <u>5-Scheme-15</u>. The Weinreb amide <u>5-Scheme-15</u> can then be treated with lithium aluminum hydride to provide the aldehyde <u>6-Scheme-15</u>. Oxidation of the aldehyde <u>6-Scheme-15</u> can be effected by sodium chlorite to provide the acid <u>7-Scheme-15</u>. Alternatively, the Weinreb amide <u>5-Scheme-15</u> can then be treated with potassium-*tert*-butoxide to directly provide the acid <u>7-Scheme-15</u>. Activation of the acid <u>7-Scheme-15</u> with

isobutyl chloroformate and 4-methylmorpholine provides 8-Scheme-15. Subsequent treatment of 8-Scheme-15 with diazomethane provides the diazoketone 9-Scheme-15. Cyclization of diazoketone 9-Scheme-15 can be effected by lithium chloride/aqueous acetic acid to give the dihydro-3(2H)-furanone 10-Scheme-15.

Scheme 16



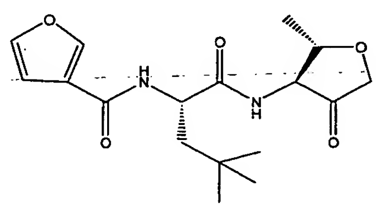
a) $(CF_3SO_2)_2O$, pyridine, DCM; b) $(nBu)_4NN_3$, toluene; c) H_2, 10% Pd/C, pTsOH, MeOH; d) Boc_2O, NEt_3, THF; e) 1M LiOH, THF; f) TBDMSCl, NEt_3, cat DMAP, DCM; g) ^{i}BuOCOCl, NMM, THF; h) diazomethane in Et_2O; i) LiCl (10eq) in 80 % acetic acid.

Compounds of the general formula (IV) can be prepared analogously to the model compound depicted in scheme 16.

Pantolactone 1-Scheme-16 is commercially available and is first converted to the triflate 2-Scheme-16. The triflate 2-Scheme-16 may be displaced with tetrabutylammonium azide to provide the corresponding azide 3-Scheme-16. Azide 3-Scheme-3 may be reduced to provide the amine salt 4-Scheme-16. Protection of the amine salt 4-Scheme-16 provides 5-Scheme-16. Ring opening of the lactone 5-Scheme-16 with lithium hydroxide provides the acid 6-Scheme-16. Protection of the primary alcohol 6-Scheme-16 with tetrabutyldimethylsilyl chloride in the presence of base provides acid 7-Scheme-16. Activation of the acid 7-Scheme-16 with isobutyl chloroformate and 4-methylmorpholine provides 8-Scheme-16. Subsequent treatment

of 8-Scheme-16 with diazomethane provides the diazoketone 9-Scheme-16. Cyclization of diazoketone 9-Scheme-16 can be effected by lithium chloride/aqueous acetic acid to give the model dihydro-3(2H)-pyranone 10-Scheme-16. Corresponding ring closure can be perfomed on mono-R5 variants of the invention.

Compounds were previously named (for instance in our priority application GB 9911417.5) using amino acid nomenclature i.e. a sidechain of 2,2-dimethylpropyl was termed the aminoacid *tert*-butylalanine. The current specification contains novel aminoacids for which common names are not available. Therefore, all previously exemplified and new compounds are re-named following IUPAC guidelines. For example, the compound below was previously named :-
Dihydro-(4-(S)-Amino-N-[(3-furanoyl)-*tert*-butyl-L-alanine])-5-(S)-methyl)-3(2H)-furanone



Under the new naming regime, the compound will be termed as:-

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide.

Unless otherwise specified, where a chiral centre is present in a molecule but not assigned, both R and S isomers are intended.

Further compounds of the present invention include, but are not limited to, the following examples;

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylbutyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-methylpentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4-methylpentyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylpentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylpentyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl -1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3,4-trimethylpentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]- 3,3,4-trimethylpentyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,4-dimethylpentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,4-dimethylpentyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4,5-dimethylhexyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4,5-dimethylhexyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl}amide,

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylbutyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-methylpentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4-methylpentyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylpentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylpentyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl -1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3,4-trimethylpentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]- 3,3,4-trimethylpentyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,4-dimethylpentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,4-dimethylpentyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4,5-dimethylhexyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4,5-dimethylhexyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl}amide,

Thiophene-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylbutyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylbutyl}amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-methylpentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4-methylpentyl}amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylpentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylpentyl}amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl -1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3,4-trimethylpentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]- 3,3,4-trimethylpentyl}amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,4-dimethylpentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,4-dimethylpentyl}amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4,5-dimethylhexyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4,5-dimethylhexyl}amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl}amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl}amide,
2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,
2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,
2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,
2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl]amide,
2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl}amide,
2-Methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylbutyl]amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylbutyl}amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-methylpentyl]amide,
1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4-methylpentyl}amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylpentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylpentyl}amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl -1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3,4-trimethylpentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]- 3,3,4-trimethylpentyl}amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,4-dimethylpentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,4-dimethylpentyl}amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl}amide,

1*H*-Pyrrole-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylbutyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylbutyl}benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]benzamide,

N-[4-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[4-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-methylpentyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4-methylpentyl}benzamide,

N-[4-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylpentyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylpentyl}benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3,4-trimethyl -1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3,4-trimethylpentyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]- 3,3,4-trimethylpentyl}benzamide,

N-[3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,4-dimethylpentyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,4-dimethylpentyl}benzamide,

N-[3,4-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]benzamide,

N-[4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]benzamide,

N-[4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4,5-dimethylhexyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4,5-dimethylhexyl}benzamide,

N-[4,5-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]benzamide,

N-[3-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]benzamide,

N-[3-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl}benzamide,

N-[3-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl}benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]benzamide,

N-[1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl]benzamide,

N-{1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl}benzamide,

N-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]benzamide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylbutyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylbutyl}amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-methylpentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4-methylpentyl}amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [4-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethylpentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethylpentyl}amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl -1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,
Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3,4-trimethylpentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]- 3,3,4-trimethylpentyl}amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,4-dimethylpentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,4-dimethylpentyl}amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,4-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4,5-dimethylhexyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-4,5-dimethylhexyl}amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [4,5-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)hexyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3-methyl-3-phenylbutyl}amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3-methyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3-phenylbutyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenylbutyl}amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-4-phenylbutyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [1S-(2-carbamoylmethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {1S-[2-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl]-3,3-dimethyl-5-phenylpentyl}amide,

Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(4-oxo-2-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)-5-phenylpentyl]amide,

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

Alternative preferred compounds include:

4-Dimethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3S-enyl]-benzamide

4-Diethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

4-Diethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide

4-Diethylamino-*N*-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

4-Methylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

4-Methylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide

4-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

4-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide

2-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

2-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide

N-[3-Methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-4-propylamino-benzamide

N-[3-Methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-4-propylamino-benzamide

4-Diethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-methylene-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

4-Diethylamino-*N*-[3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-methylene-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

N-[2-Cyclopropyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-4-dimethylamino-benzamide

4-Dimethylamino-*N*-[3,3,4-trimethyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-pentyl]-benzamide

3-Hydroxy-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

N-[1S-(4,4-Difluoro-2R-methyl-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-butyl]-4-hydroxy-benzamide

N-[1S-(4-Fluoro-2R-methyl-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-butyl]-4-hydroxy-benzamide

and the corresponding R5 ethyl and hydroxymethyl analogs;
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

Additional preferred compounds of the invention include:

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[3,3-dimethyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-amide

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[2-cyclohexyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-amide

(1*S*)-*N*-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclohexyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclohexyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[2-cyclopentyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-amide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclopentyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclopentyl-1-(3-methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[3,3-dimethyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-amide

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[2-cyclohexyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-amide

(1*S*)-*N*-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclohexyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclohexyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[2-cyclopentyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-amide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclopentyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclopentyl-1-(3-ethyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[3,3-dimethyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-amide

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[2-cyclohexyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-amide

(1*S*)-*N*-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclohexyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclohexyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

Furan-3-carboxylic acid (1*S*)-[2-cyclopentyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-amide

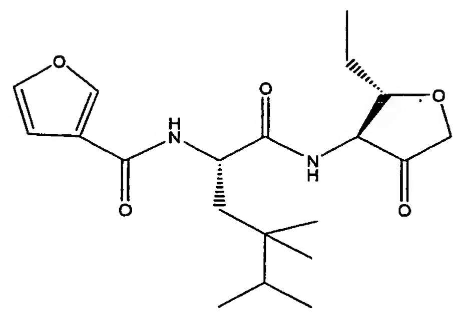
(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclopentyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-benzamide

(1*S*)-*N*-[2-Cyclopentyl-1-(3-propyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-benzamide

especially the respective 3R,4R stereoisomers of the compounds above and most preferably the respective 3S,4S stereosisomers;

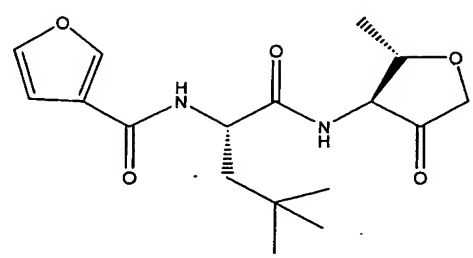
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

Example molecules prepared using the general chemistries outlined above and by the methods detailed in the experimental are shown in Tables 1 and 2. Judicial combination of R1, R3 and R5 substituents in general formula II, III and IV yields potent and selective inhibitors of cathepsin S and/or other proteases of the papain superfamily e.g. Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3,4-trimethyl -1S-(2S-ethyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)pentyl]amide:



Ki mammalian cath S (15nM), murine cath S (149nM) rat cath S (271nM), cathepsin L (> 100μM), cathepsin K (5.5μM). Molecules may be chosen which show a range of activities for mammalian, murine and rat cathepsin S (see Table 2) and other cathepsins which may exemplify many facets of an inhibitor development programme e.g. activities in murine or mammalian cell-based assays, dosing of species for disease-related animal models etc.

Molecules of general formula II, III and IV have the potential for good oral bioavailability e.g.



Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide dosed i.v. and orally at 10mg / kg to mice gave an oral bioavailability of *% (F)* 58.

<u>Detailed disclosure of the embodiments</u>

<u>Experimental Section</u>

Solution Phase Chemistry

Example 1. Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide **(4)**

Following general chemistry scheme 8

(a) General method for the synthesis of N-Boc protected diazoketones, exemplified by (2S, 3S)-N-Boc-O-t-butyl-L-threonyldiazomethane **(1)**

(2S, 3S)- N-Boc-O-t-butyl-L-threonine (1.2g, 4.2mmol) was dissolved in dry DCM (20mL) and N-methylmorpholine (1mL, 2.2eq) added. The reaction mixture was cooled to –15°C and stirred under an atmosphere of argon. Isobutyl chloroformate (0.56mL, 4.3mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for 10mins at –15°C. A solution of diazomethane in diethyl ether (45mL, approx 40mmol) was added and the reaction allowed to warm to room temperature over 1hr, then acetic acid was added dropwise until effervescence had ceased. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (100mL) and washed successively with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x 75mL), water (75mL) and brine (75mL) and dried over sodium sulphate. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give crude (2S, 3S)-N-Boc-O-t-butyl-L-threonyldiazomethane (1.2g, ~100%) as a pale yellow oil. The above synthesis was repeated 9 times and the total crude product pooled (12g) and used without purification for the next stage.

(b) General method for the synthesis of Boc-3(2H)-furanones, exemplified by dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Boc])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(2)**

A solution of lithium chloride (13.6g, 320mmol) in 80% aqueous acetic acid (400mL) was cooled to 5°C and added to crude (2S, 3S)-N-Boc-O-t-butyl-L-threonyldiazomethane **(1)** (9.6g) with stirring. The oil dissolved over 10mins and stirring continued for a further 1hr slowly warming to room temperature, with evolution of gas. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue taken into EtOAc (250mL) and washed successively with water (250mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x 100mL) and brine (75mL), then dried over sodium sulphate. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the crude product purified by flash chromatography over silica gel (150g) eluting with EtOAc / heptane (1:2, v/v). Two fractions were pooled and the quicker eluting fraction reduced *in vacuo* to approx 50mL heptane and left to crystallise to give dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Boc])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(2)** as a white solid, yield 4.05g, 18.8mmol, 58%. Electrospray-MS m/z 216 (MH^+), 160 (MH^+ - 56), elemental analysis $C_{10}H_{17}O_4N$ (req) %C 55.80, %H 7.96, %N 6.51, (fnd) %C 55.82, %H 7.86, %N 6.44.

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 1.41 (9H, s, C(C$\underline{H}_3$)$_3$), 1.49 (3H, d, *J* 6, 5S-C$\underline{H}_3$), 3.72 (1H, bm, furanone C$\underline{H}\alpha$), 3.90-4.02 (2H, 5S-$\underline{H}$ + 1 x furanone COC$\underline{H}_2$O), 4.22 (1H, d, *J* 17.4, 1 x furanone COC$\underline{H}_2$O), 4.85 (1H, bs, furanone, N$\underline{H}$).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 19.34 (5S-$\underline{C}H_3$), 28.45 (C($\underline{C}H_3$)$_3$), 62.79 (furanone $\underline{C}H\alpha$), 71.06 (furanone CO$\underline{C}H_2$O), 77.96 (5S-$\underline{C}HCH_3$), 80.88 ($\underline{C}$(CH_3)$_3$), 155.6 ((CH_3)$_3$ CO-$\underline{C}$O), 212.6 (furanone $\underline{C}$O).

(c) General method for N-terminal extension, exemplified by dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Boc-L-*tert*-butylalanyl])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(3)**

Dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Boc])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(2)** (1.0g, 4.6mmol) was treated with a solution of 4.0M HCl in dioxan (25mL) at room temperature for 1hr. The solvents were removed *in vacuo* and the residue azeotroped with 2 x toluene to give the hydrochloride salt as a white solid.

Boc-L-*tert*-butylalanine pentafluorophenyl ester (2.0g, 1.05eq) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (0.735g, 1.05eq) were dissolved in DMF (20mL) and after 5mins added to the above salt. The clear solution was then treated with N-methylmorpholine (0.51g, 0.56mL, 1.1eq) and left at room temperature for 2hrs. The solvents were removed *in vacuo* and the crude product purified by flash chromatography over silica gel (50g) eluting with EtOAc / heptane (1:3, v/v), then EtOAc / heptane (1:2, v/v). Fractions were pooled and reduced *in vacuo* to give dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Boc-L-*tert*-butylalanyl])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(3)** as a white solid, yield 1.31g, 3.82mmol, 83%. Electrospray-MS m/z 343 (MH^+), 287 (MH^+ - 56).

(d) General method for addition of capping group, exemplified by Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide **(4)**

Dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Boc-L-*tert*-butylalanyl])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(3)** (1.03g, 3.0mmol)) was treated with a solution of 4.0M HCl in dioxan (25mL) at room temperature for 1hr. The solvents were removed *in vacuo* and the residue azeotroped with 2 x toluene to give the hydrochloride salt as a white solid.

Furan-3-carboxypentafluorophenyl ester (0.88g, 1.05eq) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (0.48g, 1.05eq) were dissolved in DMF (15mL) and after 5mins added to the above salt. The clear solution was then treated with N-methylmorpholine (0.33g, 0.36mL, 1.1eq) and left at room temperature for 2hrs, producing a dark solution. The solvents were removed *in vacuo* and the crude product purified by flash chromatography over silica gel (50g) eluting with EtOAc / heptane (3:2, v/v). Fractions were pooled and reduced *in vacuo* to give Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide **(4)** as a pale tan solid, yield 0.45g, 1.35mmol, 45%. Electrospray-MS m/z 337 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 10.29mins (97.3%), HRMS $C_{17}H_{24}O_5N_2Na$ requires *M*, 359.1583, found: MNa^+, 359.1573. (δ - 2.85 ppm), elemental analysis $C_{17}H_{24}O_5N_2$ (req) %C 60.70, %H 7.19, %N 8.32, (fnd) %C 60.08, %H 7.07, %N 8.17.

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.93 (9H, s, $C(C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 1.35 (3H, d, *J* 6, 5S-$C\underline{H}_3$), 1.68/1.85 (2H, m, $CHC\underline{H}_2C(CH_3)_3$), 3.80 (1H, t, *J* 8.2, furanone C<u>H</u>α), 4.08 / 4.15 (2H, d, *J* 17.0, furanone $COC\underline{H}_2O$), 4.10 (1H, bm, 5S-<u>H</u>), 4.75 (1H, m, *tert*-BuAla C<u>H</u>α), 6.59 (1H, d, *J* 1.6, furan <u>H</u>4), 7.35 (1H, t, *J* 1.2, furan <u>H</u>5), 7.87 (1H, s, furan <u>H</u>2), 7.95 (1H, d, *J* 7.2, *tert*-BuAla, N<u>H</u>), 8.35 (1H, d, *J* 7.4, furanone, N<u>H</u>).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 18.67 (5S-$\underline{C}H_3$), 29.36 ($C(\underline{C}H_3)_3$), 30.40 ($\underline{C}(CH_3)_3$), 44.52 ($CH\underline{C}H_2C(CH_3)_3$), 50.93 (*tert*-BuAla <u>C</u>Hα), 61.11 (furanone <u>C</u>Hα), 70.92 (furanone $CO\underline{C}H_2O$), 75.76 (5S-$\underline{C}HCH_3$), 108.4 (furan <u>C</u>4), 121.5 (furan <u>C</u>3), 143.2 (furan <u>C</u>2 or 5), 145.2 (furan <u>C</u>2 or 5), 162.5 (furan –3-<u>C</u>O), 174.2 (*tert*-BuAla <u>C</u>O), 210.9 (furanone <u>C</u>O).

As with other ring ketones, the product of step d) may be deployed as an inhibitor, or may be further processed to the other functionalities for R7/R7' such as the exoalkene shown in step e).

(e) General method for conversion of exocyclic ketone to exocyclic alkene, e.g. Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-methylene-tetrahydrofuran-3R-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide **(5)**

Furan-3-carboxylic acid [3,3-dimethyl-1S-(2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-ylcarbamoyl)butyl]amide **(4)** (20mg, 0.06mmol) was dissolved in THF (3mL), cooled to 0°C and stirred under nitrogen. Tebbe reagent (125μL, 1.05eq, 0.5M in toluene) was

added and the dark red solution allowed to warm to RT over 15mins. Diethyl ether (10mL) was added followed by 0.1N NaOH (13 drops). The yellow solution was extracted with further diethyl ether (10mL) and the combined organic dried over Na_2SO_4. The solution was filtered through celite, evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue purified by reverse phase semi-prep HPLC. Desired fractions were combined and lyophilised to a white solid **(5)**, Yield 3.7mg, 0.011mmol, 18.5%. Electrospray-MS m/z 335 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 11.52mins (98.1%).

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.99 (9H, s, C(C$\underline{H}_3$)$_3$), 1.26 (3H, d, *J* 6.1, 5S-C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.56 (1H, dd, *J* 14.5, 7.7, CHC$\underline{H}_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$),), 2.04 (1H, dd, *J* 14.5, 7.7, CHC$\underline{H}_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$), 3.59 (1H, dq, *J* 8.0, 6.1, 5S-$\underline{H}$), 4.37 (1H, dq, *J* 13.7, 2.3, THF COC$\underline{H}_2$O), 4.45 (1H, brd, , *J* 8.7, THF C$\underline{H}\alpha$), 4.48 (1H, brd, *J* 13.7, THF COC$\underline{H}_2$O), 4.60 (1H, dt, *J* 8.0, 5.0, *tert*-BuAla C$\underline{H}\alpha$), 5.02 (1H, ddd, J 2.5, 2.2, C=C$\underline{H}_2$), 5.06 (1H, q, *J* 2.5, C=C$\underline{H}_2$), 6.07 (1H, d, *J* 7.2, *tert*-BuAla, N$\underline{H}$), 6.22 (1H, d, *J* 8.7, THF, N$\underline{H}$), 6.59 (1H, dd, *J* 1.9, 0.8, furan $\underline{H}$4), 7.44 (1H, t, *J* 1.7, furan $\underline{H}$5), 7.93 (1H, m, furan $\underline{H}$2).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 18.2 (5S-$\underline{C}$H$_3$), 29.7 (C($\underline{C}$H$_3$)$_3$), 30.40 ($\underline{C}$(CH$_3$)$_3$), 45.1 (CH$\underline{C}$H$_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$), 50.9 (*tert*-BuAla $\underline{C}$Hα), 58.3 (THF, $\underline{C}$Hα), 69.9 (THF, CO$\underline{C}$H$_2$O), 79.9 (5S-$\underline{C}$HCH$_3$), 105.9 (THF, C=$\underline{C}$H$_2$), 108.0 (furan $\underline{C}$4), 144.0 (furan $\underline{C}$2 or 5), 145.0 (furan $\underline{C}$2 or 5), 162.4 (furan –3-$\underline{C}$O), 172.4 (*tert*-BuAla $\underline{C}$O).

Example 2. 4,4-Dimethyl-2S-(furan-3-sulfonylamino)pentanoic acid (2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-yl)amide **(5)**

(a) General method for addition of sulphonyl capping group, exemplified by 4,4-Dimethyl-2S-(furan-3-sulfonylamino)pentanoic acid (2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-yl)amide **(5)**

Dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Boc-$\underline{L}$-*tert*-butylalanyl])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(3)** (34mg, 0.1mmol) was treated with a solution of 4.0M HCl in dioxan (5mL) at room temperature for 1hr. The solvents were removed *in vacuo* and the residue azeotroped with 2 x toluene to give the hydrochloride salt as a white solid.

Hydrochloride salt was dissolved in dry DCM (2mL) and furan-3-sulphonylchloride (33mg, 0.2mmol) added followed by diisopropylethylamine (52µL, 3eq) and catalytic

N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (2mg). After 2hr at room temperature, the solution was diluted with DCM (15mL) and washed successively with 0.1N HCl (25mL), water (2 x 25mL) and brine (25mL), then dried over sodium sulphate. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the crude product purified by flash chromatography over silica gel (15g) eluting with EtOAc / heptane (1:1, v/v). Fractions were pooled and reduced *in vacuo* to give 4,4-Dimethyl-2S-(furan-3-sulfonylamino)pentanoic acid (2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-yl)amide **(5)** as a white solid, lyophilised from 0.1%aq TFA / acetonitrile, yield 14mg, 0.038mmol, 38%. Electrospray-MS m/z 373.2 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 10.80mins (97.6%), HRMS $C_{16}H_{24}O_6N_2SNa$ requires *M*, 395.1253, found: MNa^+, 395.1251. (δ - 0.53 ppm), elemental analysis $C_{16}H_{24}O_6N_2S$ .1/3 TFA (req) %C 48.78, %H 5.98, %N 6.83, (fnd) %C 48.47, %H 6.11, %N 6.75.

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.87 (9H, s, C($C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 1.40 (3H, d, *J* 6, 5S-C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.45 (1H, q, CHC$\underline{H}_2$C($CH_3)_3$), 1.75 (1H, q, *J* 4.1, 10.4, CHC$\underline{H}_2$C($CH_3)_3$), 3.78 (1H, m, furanone C$\underline{H}\alpha$), 3.82 (1H, dt, *tert*-BuAla C$\underline{H}\alpha$), 4.05 (2H, d, *J* 17.0, furanone COC$\underline{H}_2$O + 5S-C$\underline{H}CH_3$), 4.20 (1H, d, *J* 17.0, furanone COC$\underline{H}_2$O), 5.62 (1H, d, *J* 7.2, *tert*-BuAla, N$\underline{H}$), 6.66 (1H, d, *J* 1.6, furan $\underline{H}$4), 6.82 (1H, d, *J* 7.2, furanone, N$\underline{H}$), 7.48 (1H, t, *J* 1.2, furan $\underline{H}$5), 8.05 (1H, m, furan $\underline{H}$2).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 18.79 (5S-$\underline{C}H_3$), 29.20 (C($\underline{C}H_3)_3$), 30.35 ($\underline{C}(CH_3)_3$), 46.20 (CH$\underline{C}H_2$C($CH_3)_3$), 54.48 (*tert*-BuAla $\underline{C}H\alpha$), 61.35 (furanone $\underline{C}H\alpha$), 70.71 (furanone CO$\underline{C}H_2$O); 75.00 (5S-$\underline{C}HCH_3$), 108.2 (furan $\underline{C}$4), 126.5 (furan $\underline{C}$3), 144.7 (furan $\underline{C}$2 or 5), 146.0 (furan $\underline{C}$2 or 5), 172.95 (*tert*-BuAla $\underline{C}$O), 211.03 (furanone $\underline{C}$O).

Example 3. 4,4-Dimethyl-2S-(thiophene-3-sulfonylamino)pentanoic acid (2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-yl)amide **(6)**

Prepared as detailed above for compound **(5)**, but using thiophene-3-sulphonyl chloride, to give **(6)** as a pale pink solid , lyophilised from 0.1%aq TFA / acetonitrile, yield 30mg, 0.077mmol, 77%. Electrospray-MS m/z 389.2 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 11.64mins (96.8%), HRMS $C_{16}H_{24}O_5N_2S_2Na$ requires *M*, 411.1024, found: MNa^+, 411.1026. (δ + 0.32 ppm), elemental analysis $C_{16}H_{24}O_5N_2S_2$ .1/4 TFA (req) %C 47.54, %H 5.86, %N 6.71, (fnd) %C 47.62, %H 5.98, %N 6.80.

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.79 (9H, s, C(C<u>H</u>$_3$)$_3$), 1.40 (3H, d, *J* 6.1, 5S-C<u>H</u>$_3$), 1.45 (1H, q, CHC<u>H</u>$_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$), 1.75 (1H, q, *J* 4.0, 14.3, CHC<u>H</u>$_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$), 3.78 (2H, m, furanone C<u>H</u>α + *tert*-BuAla C<u>H</u>α), 4.06 / 4.19 (2H, d, *J* 17.3, furanone COC<u>H</u>$_2$O), 4.07 (1H, q, *J* 6.0, 5S-C<u>H</u>CH$_3$), 5.51 (1H, d, *J* 7.0, *tert*-BuAla, N<u>H</u>), 6.86 (1H, d, *J* 7.2, furanone, N<u>H</u>), 7.36 (1H, dd, *J* 1.3, 5.1, thiophene <u>H</u>4), 7.44 (1H, dd, *J* 5.1, 3.1, thiophene <u>H</u>5), 8.0 (1H, dd, *J* 3.1, 1.3, thiophene <u>H</u>2).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 18.88 (5S-<u>C</u>H$_3$), 29.20 (C(<u>C</u>H$_3$)$_3$), 30.36 (<u>C</u>(CH$_3$)$_3$), 46.25 (CH<u>C</u>H$_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$), 54.56 (*tert*-BuAla <u>C</u>Hα), 61.40 (furanone <u>C</u>Hα), 70.50 (furanone CO<u>C</u>H$_2$O), 75.80 (5S-<u>C</u>HCH$_3$), 125.41, 128.17, 131.18 (thiophene <u>C</u>2 or 4 or 5), 138.82 (thiophene <u>C</u>3), 172.90 (*tert*-BuAla <u>C</u>O), 211.04 (furanone <u>C</u>O).

Example 4. 4,4-Dimethyl-2S-(thiophene-2-sulfonylamino)pentanoic acid (2S-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3S-yl)amide **(7)**

Prepared as detailed above for compound **(5)**, but using thiophene-2-sulphonyl chloride, to give **(7)** as a pale pink solid , lyophilised from 0.1%aq TFA / acetonitrile, yield 14mg, 0.036mmol, 36%. Electrospray-MS m/z 389.2 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 11.91mins (98.3%), HRMS $C_{16}H_{24}O_5N_2S_2Na$ requires *M*, 411.1024, found: MNa^+, 411.1015. (δ - 2.35 ppm), elemental analysis $C_{16}H_{24}O_5N_2S_2$ .1/2 TFA (req) %C 45.84, %H 5.54, %N 6.29, (fnd) %C 45.53, %H 5.61, %N 6.22.

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.82 (9H, s, C(C<u>H</u>$_3$)$_3$), 1.41 (3H, d, *J* 6.0, 5S-C<u>H</u>$_3$), 1.45 (1H, dd, *J* 3.8, 14.7, CHC<u>H</u>$_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$), 1.75 (1H, q, *J* 4.0, 14.3, CHC<u>H</u>$_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$), 3.78 (1H, m, furanone C<u>H</u>α), 3.84 (1H, m, *tert*-BuAla C<u>H</u>α), 4.06 / 4.22 (2H, d, *J* 17.0, furanone COC<u>H</u>$_2$O), 4.07 (1H, m, 5S-C<u>H</u>CH$_3$), 5.42 (1H, d, *J* 6.8, *tert*-BuAla, N<u>H</u>), 6.72 (1H, d, *J* 7.0, furanone, N<u>H</u>), 7.10 (1H, q, *J* 3.8, 5.0, thiophene <u>H</u>4), 7.62 (1H, q, *J* 1.3, 5.0, thiophene <u>H</u>3 or <u>H</u>5), 7.66 (1H, q, *J* 1.3, 3.8, thiophene <u>H</u>3 or <u>H</u>5).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 18.87 (5S-<u>C</u>H$_3$), 29.19 (C(<u>C</u>H$_3$)$_3$), 30.26 (<u>C</u>(CH$_3$)$_3$), 46.21 (CH<u>C</u>H$_2$C(CH$_3$)$_3$), 54.82 (*tert*-BuAla <u>C</u>Hα), 61.43 (furanone <u>C</u>Hα), 70.71 (furanone CO<u>C</u>H$_2$O), 75.06 (5S-<u>C</u>HCH$_3$), 127.54, 132.49, 132.89 (thiophene <u>C</u>3 or 4 or 5), 139.49 (thiophene <u>C</u>3), 172.83 (*tert*-BuAla <u>C</u>O), 210.88 (furanone <u>C</u>O).

<u>General Synthesis of Chiral β-alkyl serine aminoacids</u>

Adapted from Blaskovich, M.A., Evinder, G., Rose, N. G. W., Wilkinson, S., Luo, Y. and Lajoie, G. A. *J. Org. Chem*, 63, 3631-3646, 1998. (Following scheme 2).

Example 5. (2S, 3S)β-hydroxynorvaline **(15)**

(a) N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-L-serine 3-methyl-3-(hydroxymethyl)oxetane ester **(8)**

N-Cbz-L-serine (10 g, 41.8 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (450 mL) and DMF (14 mL) and added dropwise over 2.5 h to a stirred solution of WSC. HCl (12 g, 62.7 mmol), N'N-dimethylaminopyridine (260 mg, 2.1 mmol) and 3-methyl-3-oxetane methanol (84 mL, 0.84 mmol) cooled to 0 °C. The reaction was warmed to room temperature and allowed to stir overnight. The mixture was washed with 0.1M HCl (200 mL), water (200 mL), 10 % Na_2CO_3 (200 mL x 2) and water (200mL x 2), dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to afford a pale yellow oil. Purification by column chromatography (4:1, EtOAc:heptane) and subsequent recrystallisation (1:1, EtOAc:heptane) yielded the target intermediate as a white crystalline solid, 8.07 g, 60 %; TLC (4:1, EtOAc:heptane), *Rf* = 0.28, electrospray-MS m/z 324.1 (MH^+).

δ_H (400 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 1.28 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3$), 3.04 (1H, t, *J* 6.2, C$\underline{H}$NH), 3.90-3.91 (1H, br m, O$\underline{H}$), 4.10-4.13 (2H, m, $C\underline{H}_2$OH), 4.41-4.55 (6H, m, 3 x $C\underline{H}_2$), 5.13 (2H, s, $OC\underline{H}_2$), 5.82 (1H, d, *J* 7.7, N$\underline{H}$), 7.35-7.36 (5H, m, $C_6\underline{H}_5$).

δ_C (100 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 20.75 ($\underline{C}H_3$), 39.67 ($\underline{C}H_2$OH), 56.39 ($\underline{C}$HNH), 63.37 ($\underline{C}H_2$), 67.19 ($\underline{C}H_2$), 68.94 ($\underline{C}H_2$), 79.50 ($O\underline{C}H_2$), 128.16 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 128.27 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 128.58 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 136.14 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 156.25 ($\underline{C}O_2$NH), 170.74 ($\underline{C}O_2$).

(b) 1-[*N*-Benzyloxycarbonyl-(1S)-1-amino-2-hydroxyethyl]-4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]oxetane **(9)**.

Compound **(8)** (10.23 g, 28.6 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DCM (150 mL) and cooled to 0 °C under N_2. A solution of boron trifluoride etherate (0.10 mL, 0.77 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes at 0 °C, then at room temperature overnight. Triethylamine (1.2 mL, 8.30 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture stirred for 30 minutes before being concentrated to a thick colourless oil. Purification by column chromatography (4:1, EtOAc:heptane) and subsequent recrystallisation (1:1, EtOAc:heptane) yielded **(9)** as a white crystalline

solid, 8.06 g, 80 %; TLC (4:1, EtOAc:heptane) R*f* = 0.27, electrospray-MS m/z 324.1 (MH^+).

δ_H (400 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.78 (3H, s, C<u>H</u>$_3$), 2.67 (1H, m, C<u>H</u>NH), 3.64-3.69 (1H, m, C<u>H</u>$_2$OH), 3.80-3.83 (1H, m, C<u>H</u>$_2$OH), 3.88 (6H, s, C<u>H</u>$_2$ x 3), 5.09 (2H, dd, *J* 18.9, 12.3 , OC<u>H</u>$_2$), 5.38 (1H, d, *J* 8.7, N<u>H</u>), 7.26-7.34 (5H, m, C_6<u>H</u>$_5$).

δ_C (100 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 14.11 (<u>C</u>H_3), 30.39 (<u>C</u>CH_3), 55.26 (<u>C</u>HNH), 61.75 (<u>C</u>H_2OH), 66.76 (<u>C</u>H_2O), 72.53 (<u>C</u>H_2 x 3), 108.29 (<u>C</u>O_3), 127.98 (<u>C</u>$_6H_5$), 128.32 (<u>C</u>$_6H_5$), 136.31 (<u>C</u>$_6H_5$), 156.31 (<u>C</u>O_2NH).

(c) 1-[*N*-Benzyloxycarbonyl-(1S)-1-amino-2-oxoethyl]-4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]oxetane **(10)**.

Compound **(9)** (6.45 g, 20.0 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DCM (55 mL) under N_2 and cooled to –78 °C in flask 1. Oxalyl chloride (2.8 mL, 31.9 mmol) was added to anhydrous DCM (85 mL) in a separate flask (flask 2) under N_2 and cooled to –78 °C. Anhydrous dimethylsulphoxide (4.7 mL, 65.8 mmol) was added to the oxalyl chloride solution and the mixture stirred at –78 °C for 15 minutes. The alcohol solution was transferred over 20 minutes by cannula to flask 2 and rinsed with anhydrous DCM (35 mL). The resulting cloudy, white mixture was stirred for 1.5 hours at –78 °C. Diisopropylethylamine (17.4 mL, 99.7 mmol) was added and the solution stirred for 30 minutes at –78 °C and 10 minutes at 0 °C. Ice-cold DCM (140 mL) was added and the solution washed with ice-cold NH_4Cl (20 % saturated solution; 3 x 140 mL) and saturated NaCl (140 mL), dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to afford a yellow solid **(10)**, 5.08 g, 79 %; TLC (3:1, EtOAc:heptane), R*f* = 0.56, electrospray-MS m/z 322.1 (40%) (MH^+), 340.2 (100%) (MH^++H_2O).

δ_H (400 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.82 (3H, s, C<u>H</u>$_3$), 3.93 (6H, s, C<u>H</u>$_2$ x 3), 4.60 (1H, d, *J* 8.8, C<u>H</u>NH), 5.12 (2H, dd, *J* 14.9, 12.4, OC<u>H</u>$_2$), 5.35 (1H, br d, *J* 8.0, N<u>H</u>), 7.30-7.36 (5H, m, C_6<u>H</u>$_5$), 9.68 (1H, s, <u>H</u>CO).

δ_C (100 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 14.25 (<u>C</u>H_3), 30.86 (<u>C</u>CH_3), 63.25 (<u>C</u>HNH), 67.22 (<u>C</u>H_2O), 72.88 (<u>C</u>H_2 x 3), 107.16 (<u>C</u>O_3), 128.13 (<u>C</u>$_6H_5$), 128.46 (<u>C</u>$_6H_5$), 136.13 (<u>C</u>$_6H_5$), 156.17 (<u>C</u>O_2NH), 195.66 (<u>C</u>HO).

(d) 1-[*N*-(Benzyloxycarbonyl)-(1S,2R)-1-amino-2-hydroxybutyl]-4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]oxetane **(11)**.

Compound **(10)** (2 g, 5.73 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DCM:Et_2O (1:1) under N_2. A solution of EtMgBr (3M solution in Et_2O; 7.6 mL, 22.9 mmol) was added quickly at – 78 °C and stirred vigorously. After 30 minutes the reaction was quenched by pouring into 5 % NH_4Cl (500 mL). DCM (500 mL) was added, the organic layer separated and washed with 3 % NH_4Cl (500 mL) and brine (500 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to afford a yellow oil. Purification by column chromatography (1:10, EtOAc:DCM) and subsequent recrystallisation (EtOAc:heptane) yielded a white crystalline solid **(11)**, 1.32 g, 60 %; TLC (1:10, EtOAc:DCM) $Rf = 0.25$, electrospray-MS m/z 352.2 (20%) (MH^+), 370.3 (100%) ($MH^+ + H_2O$).

δ_H (400 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.82 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3$), 0.94 (3H, t, *J* 7.4, $CH_2C\underline{H}_3$), 1.36-1.53 (2H, m, $C\underline{H}_2CH_3$), 3.85 (1H, d, *J* 10.3, $C\underline{H}$), 3.93 (6H, s, $C\underline{H}_2$ x 3), 4.05 (1H, t, *J* 6.8, $C\underline{H}$), 5.13-5.14 (2H, dd, *J* 16.4, 12.7, $OC\underline{H}_2$), 5.32 (1H, d, *J* 10.2, $N\underline{H}$), 7.30-7.36 (5H, m, $C_6\underline{H}_5$).
δ_C (100 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 10.11 ($CH_2\underline{C}H_3$), 14.34 ($\underline{C}H_3$), 25.98 ($\underline{C}H_2CH_3$), 30.65 ($\underline{C}CH_3$), 56.05 ($\underline{C}HOH$), 66.83 ($\underline{C}H_2O$), 70.81 ($\underline{C}HNH$), 72.76 ($\underline{C}H_2$ x 3), 108.93 ($\underline{C}O_3$), 127.65 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 128.45 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 136.65 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 156.83 ($\underline{C}O_2NH$).

(e) 1-[*N*-Benzyloxycarbonyl-(1S)-1-amino-2-oxobutyl]-4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]oxetane **(12)**.

Compound **(11)** (1.32 g, 3.8 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DCM (10 mL) under N_2 and cooled to –78 °C in flask 1. Oxalyl chloride (2M solution in DCM; 3 mL, 6.0 mmol) was diluted with anhydrous DCM (10 mL) in a separate flask (flask 2) under N_2 and cooled to –78 °C. Anhydrous dimethylsulphoxide (0.88 mL, 12.4 mmol) was added to the oxalyl chloride solution and the mixture stirred at –78 °C for 15 minutes. The alcohol solution was transferred over 20 minutes by cannula to flask 2 and rinsed with anhydrous DCM (10 mL). The resulting cloudy, white mixture was stirred for 2 hr 15 min at –78 °C. DIPEA (3.3 mL, 18.8 mmol) was added and the solution stirred

for 30 minutes at –78 °C and 10 minutes at 0 °C. Ice-cold DCM (25 mL) was added and the solution washed with ice-cold NH_4Cl (5 % saturated solution; 3 x 25 mL) and saturated NaCl (25 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to afford an orange oil. Purification by column chromatography (2:3, EtOAc:heptane) yielded a colourless oil **(12)**, 556 mg, 45 %; TLC (2:3, EtOAc:heptane) $Rf = 0.25$, ,electrospray-MS m/z 350.2 (60%) (MH^+), 368.2 (100%) ($MH^+ + H_2O$).

δ_H (400 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.80 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.06 (3H, t, *J* 7.2, $CH_2C\underline{H}_3$), 2.48-2.56 (1H, m, C$\underline{H}CH_3$), 2.80-2.88 (1H, m, C$\underline{H}CH_3$), 3.90 (6H, s, C$\underline{H}_2$ x 3), 4.60 (1H, d, *J* 8.8, C$\underline{H}$NH), 5.09 (2H, s, OC$\underline{H}_2$), 5.66 (1H, d, *J* 8.5, N$\underline{H}$), 7.30-7.35 (5H, m, $C_6\underline{H}_5$).

δ_C (100 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 7.53 ($CH_2\underline{C}H_3$), 14.25 ($\underline{C}H_3$), 30.57 ($\underline{C}CH_3$), 35.74 ($\underline{C}H_2CH_3$), 62.33 ($\underline{C}$HNH), 67.05 ($\underline{C}H_2O$), 72.94 ($\underline{C}H_2$ x 3), 106.98 ($\underline{C}O_3$), 128.10 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 128.46 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 136.31 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 155.99 ($\underline{C}O_2$NH).

(f) 1-[*N*-(Benzyloxycarbonyl)-(1S,2S)-1-amino-2-hydroxybutyl]-4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]oxetane **(13)**.

Compound **(12)** (2.77 g, 7.9 mmol) and $LiBH_4$ (1.73 g, 79 mmol) were cooled to –78 °C under N_2. A solution of DCM:CH_3OH (1.5:1; 332 mL cooled to –78 °C) was added and the solution stirred at –78 °C overnight. After being warmed to room temperature, the solution was poured into 5% NH_4Cl solution (500 mL) and DCM (300 mL) added. The organic layer was separated, washed with 5 % NH_4Cl solution (500 mL) and brine (400 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to afford a white solid **(13)**, 2.51 g, 90 %; TLC (1:1, EtOAc:heptane) $Rf = 0.23$, electrospray-MS m/z 352.2 (40%) (MH^+), 370.3 (100%) ($MH^+ + H_2O$).

δ_H (400 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.82 (3H, s, CH_3), 0.97 (3H, t, *J* 7.4, $CH_2C\underline{H}_3$), 1.44-1.45 (1H, m, C$\underline{H}CH_3$), 1.63-1.68 (1H, m, C$\underline{H}CH_3$), 3.44 (1H, d, *J* 4.0, C$\underline{H}$OH), 3.66-3.69 (1H, m, C$\underline{H}$NH), 3.92 (6H, s, C$\underline{H}_2$ x 3), 5.04 (1H, d, *J* 9.8, N$\underline{H}$), 5.16 (2H, d, *J* 6.1, OC$\underline{H}_2$), 7.36 (5H, d, *J* 4.3, C_6H_5),

δ_C (100 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 9.79 ($CH_2\underline{C}H_3$), 14.27 ($\underline{C}H_3$), 26.10 ($\underline{C}H_2CH_3$), 30.56 ($\underline{C}CH_3$), 57.57 ($\underline{C}$HOH), 66.94 ($\underline{C}H_2O$), 69.80 ($\underline{C}$HNH), 72.66 ($\underline{C}H_2$ x 3), 108.89 ($\underline{C}O_3$), 128.06 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 128.47 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 136.51 ($\underline{C}_6H_5$), 156.49 ($\underline{C}O_2$NH).

(g) (1S,2S)-(1-amino-2-hydroxybutyl)-4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]oxetane **(14).**

Compound **(13)** (2.51g, 7.1mmol) was dissolved in ethanol (220 mL) and 10 % Pd/C (218 mg) added. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight in the presence of H_2. The catalyst was removed by filtration through celite and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to afford a thick oil. Purification by column chromatography (20:1, DCM:MeOH) yielded a pale yellow oil **(14)**, 1.24 g, 92 %, which crystallised on standing; TLC (5:1, DCM:MeOH) *Rf* = 0.51, electrospray-MS m/z 218.1 (MH^+).

δ_H (400 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 0.83 (3H, s, $C\underline{H_3}$), 0.98 (3H, t, *J* 7.4, $CH_2C\underline{H_3}$), 1.38-1.48 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}CH_3$), 1.71-1.78 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}CH_3$), 2.77 (1H, d, *J* 7.1, $C\underline{H}NH_2$), 3.62-3.66 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}OH$), 3.93 (6H, s, $C\underline{H_2}$ x 3).

δ_C (100 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 9.57 ($CH_2\underline{C}H_3$), 14.37 ($\underline{C}H_3$), 26.01 ($\underline{C}H_2CH_3$), 30.52 ($\underline{C}CH_3$), 58.52 ($\underline{C}HOH$), 72.59 ($\underline{C}HNH_2$), 72.67 ($\underline{C}H_2$ x 3), 109.62 ($\underline{C}O_3$).

(h) (2S,3S)β-hydroxynorvaline **(15)**

Compound **(14)** (1.24 g, 5.5 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (68 mL) and trifluoroacetic acid (1.58 mL) and H_2O (1.13 mL) added. The resulting cloudy, white solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo*. The colourless residue was dissolved in MeOH (66 mL) and H_2O (17 mL) and 10 % Cs_2CO_3 (9.2 g in 92 mL H_2O) added. After stirring overnight at room temperature, the solution was acidified with 2 M HCl (~35 mL) to pH <3. The solution was loaded onto a cation exchange column (Bio-Rad AG 50W-X8 100-200 mesh, hydrogen form, 4.5 x 20 cm) washed with 0.01 M HCl (500 mL) and H_2O (500 mL) and eluted with 2M NH_4OH (2 L) then lyopholised to afford a pale yellow solid. The solid was washed with MeOH to yield an off-white solid **(15)**, 227 mg, 30 %; TLC (4:1:1, butan-2-ol : AcOH : H_2O) *Rf* = 0.26, electrospray-MS m/z 134.1 (MH^+), elemental analysis $C_5H_{11}O_3N$ (req) %C 45.10, %H 8.33, %N 10.52, (fnd) %C 44.67, %H 8.03, %N 9.92.

δ_H (400 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 92:8 *erythro* (2S, 3S) : *threo* (2S, 3R), 1.00 (3H, t, *J* 7.4, $C\underline{H_3}$), 1.40-1.54 (2H, m, $C\underline{H_2}$), 3.41 (0.08H, d, *J* 4.2, $C\underline{H}$), 3.61 (0.92H, d, *J* 4.2, $C\underline{H}$), 3.60-3.65 (0.08H, m, $C\underline{H}$), 3.66-3.69 (0.92H, m, $C\underline{H}$).

δ_C (100 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 11.02 ($CH_2\underline{C}H_3$), 25.26 ($\underline{C}H_2CH_3$), 61.26 ($\underline{C}$HOH), 72.09 ($\underline{C}HNH_2$), 172.03 ($\underline{C}O_2H$).

General method for the synthesis of Fmoc-3(2H)-furanones

Exemplified by dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5S-ethyl-3(2H)-furanone (18), following the general chemistry detailed in scheme 1 & 1A.

(a) Preparation of Fmoc-(2S,3S)-β-ethylserine **(16)**

(2S,3S)β-hydroxynorvaline **(15)** (277mg, 2.07mmol) and sodium carbonate (2.1eq, 460mg) were dissolved with stirring and ice-cooling in water (25mL) and THF (10mL). 9-fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (1.05eq, 560mg) in THF (15mL) was added over 45mins and the mixture stirred for a further 1hr at room temperature. Chloroform (100mL) and water (50mL) were added and the mixture acidified to pH2 with 0.1N HCl. The organic layer was collected and the aqueous washed with a further 2 x 100mL chloroform. The combined organics were backwashed with brine (1 x 300mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. The chloroform was reduced *in vacuo* to yield a fine white solid. The solid was dissolved in *tert*-butyl methylether (25mL) with heating and heptane (75mL) added to give a cloudy solution. The mixture was cooled to –20°C and each 30mins further heptane (75mL) added for 4 cycles. The precipitate was filtered off and dried *in vacuo* to a fine white solid **(16)** 590mg, 80.6 %; TLC ($CHCl_3$; MeOH 3:1) Rf = 0.40, electrospray-MS m/z 356.2 (MH^+).

(b) Preparation of (2S, 3S)-N-Fmoc-β-ethylserinydiazomethane **(17)**

Following the general method detailed in example 1. (a) for compound **(1)**, Fmoc-(2S, 3S)-β-ethylserine **(16)** (560mg) was converted to a yellow solid (600mg) **(17)** used without purification.

(c) Preparation of dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5S-ethyl-3(2H)-furanone **(18)**

A solution of lithium chloride (1.0g, 23.5mmol) in 80% aqueous acetic acid (10mL) was cooled to 5°C and added to crude (2S, 3S)-N-Fmoc-β-ethylserinydiazomethane **(17)** (0.6g) with stirring. The oil dissolved over 10mins and stirring continued for a further 1hr slowly warming to room temperature, with evolution of gas. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue taken into EtOAc (50mL) and washed

successively with water (50mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x 100mL) and brine (75mL), then dried over sodium sulphate. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the crude product purified by flash chromatography over silica gel (25g) eluting with EtOAc / heptane (1:3, v/v). Desired fractions were pooled and reduced *in vacuo* to give dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5S-ethyl-3(2H)-furanone **(18)** as a white solid, yield 320mg, 0.91mmol, 58%. Electrospray-MS m/z 352 (MH^+), HRMS $C_{21}H_{21}O_4NNa$ requires *M*, 374.1368, found: MNa^+, 374.1368. (δ - 1.49 ppm), analytical HPLC Rt = 13.61mins (98.4%), elemental analysis $C_{21}H_{21}O_4N$ (req) %C 71.78, %H 6.02, %N 3.99, (fnd) %C 70.95, %H 6.22, %N 3.81.

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 1.05 (3H, m, $CH_2\underline{CH_3}$), 1.76, 1.94 (2H, bm, $\underline{CH_2}CH_3$), 3.83 (1H, bm, furanone C$\underline{H}$β), 3.88 (1H, bm, furanone C$\underline{H}$α), 4.02 (1H, d, *J* 17.3, 1 x furanone COC$\underline{H_2}$O), 4.23 (2H, m, 1 x furanone COC$\underline{H_2}$O + Fmoc C$\underline{H}$CH$_2$O), 4.42 (2H, b, Fmoc CHC$\underline{H_2}$O), 5.05 (1H, b, furanone, N$\underline{H}$), 7.35 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic), 7.42 (2H, t, *J* 7.3, Fmoc aromatic), 7.58 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic), 7.77 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 8.90 (5S-$CH_2\underline{C}H_3$), 26.14 (5S-$\underline{C}H_2CH_3$), 46.90 (Fmoc $\underline{C}HCH_2O$), 60.50 (furanone $\underline{C}$Hα), 66.99 (Fmoc CH$\underline{C}$H$_2$O), 70.43 (furanone CO$\underline{C}$H$_2$O), 81.65 (furanone $\underline{C}$Hβ), 119.76 (Fmoc aromatic), 124.72 (Fmoc aromatic), 126.85 (Fmoc aromatic), 127.53 (Fmoc aromatic), 141.09 (Fmoc aromatic), 143.37 (Fmoc aromatic), 155.76 (O$\underline{C}$ONH), 211.72 (furanone $\underline{C}$O).

(d) Preparation of (2S, 3R)-N-Fmoc-*O*-*t*-butyl-L-threonyldiazomethane **(19)**

Following the general method detailed in example 1. (a) for compound **(1)**, Fmoc-(2S,3R)-*O*-*t*-butyl-L-threonine (1.99 g, 5 mmol) was converted to (2S, 3R)-N-Fmoc-*O*-*t*-butyl-L-threonyldiazomethane **(19)** (2.11g, 100%) as a pale yellow immobile oil. This compound was carried through to the next stage without further purification. Electrospray-MS m/z 444 (MNa^+, 20%), 394 (MH^+ - N_2, 70%) and 338 (MH^+ -*t*butyl - N_2, 100%).

(e) Preparation of (2R, 3S)-N-Fmoc-*O*-*t*-butyl-D-threonyldiazomethane **(20)**

Following the general method detailed in example 1. (a) for compound **(1)**, Fmoc-(2R,3S)-*O*-*t*-butyl-D-threonine (0.4 g, 1 mmol) was converted to (2S, 3R)-N-Fmoc-*O*-*t*-

butyl-L-threonyldiazomethane **(20)** (0.48g, 111%) as a pale yellow immobile oil. This compound was carried through to the next stage without further purification. Electrospray-MS m/z 394 (MH^+ - N_2, 60%) and 338 (MH^+ - *t*butyl - N_2, 100%).

(f) Preparation of (2S, 3S)-N-Fmoc-*O-t*-butyl-L-*allo*-threonyldiazomethane **(21)**
Following the general method detailed in example 1. (a) for compound **(1)**, Fmoc-(2S,3S)-*O-t*-butyl-L-*allo*-threonine (0.4 g, 1 mmol) was converted to (2S, 3S)-N-Fmoc-*O-t*-butyl-L-*allo*-threonyldiazomethane **(21)** (0.53g, 123%) as a pale yellow immobile oil.. Electrospray-MS m/z 394 (MH^+ - N_2, 90%) and 338 (MH^+ - *t*butyl - N_2, 60%).

(g) Preparation of (2S)-N-Fmoc-*O-t*-butyl-L-serinyldiazomethane **(22)**
Following the general method detailed in example 1. (a) for compound **(1)**, Fmoc-(2S)-*O-t*-butyl-L-serine (1.15 g, 3 mmol) was converted to (2S)-N-Fmoc-*O-t*-butyl-L-serinyldiazomethane **(22)** (1.67g, 136%) as a pale yellow immobile oil. This compound was carried through to the next stage without further purification. Electrospray-MS m/z 430 (MNa^+, 5%), 380 (MH^+ - N_2, 12%) and 324 (MH^+ - *t*butyl - N_2, 28%).

(h) Preparation of (2R)-N-Fmoc-*O-t*-butyl-D-serinyldiazomethane **(23)**
Following the general method detailed in example 1. (a) for compound **(1)**, Fmoc-(2R)-*O-t*-butyl-L-serine (0.38 g, 1 mmol) was converted to (2R)-N-Fmoc-*O-t*-butyl-D-serinyldiazomethane **(23)** (1.67g, 136%) as a pale yellow immobile oil. This compound was carried through to the next stage without further purification. Electrospray-MS m/z 380 (MH^+ - N_2, 55%) and 324 (MH^+ - *t*butyl - N_2, 52%).

(i) Preparation of dihydro-(4R-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5R-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(22)** (Scheme 1A)
Following the general method detailed for cyclisation of **(17)** to **(18)**, diazoketone **(19)** cyclised to give dihydro-(4R-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5R-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(22)** isolated as a white solid, yield 69%, electrospray-MS m/z 338 (MH^+, 100%), analytical HPLC Rt = 14.59 mins (97.7%).
δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 1.50 (3H, brd,C$\underline{H}_3$), 3.80 (1H, brt, furanone C$\underline{H}\alpha$), 3.97 (1H, brm, furanone C$\underline{H}\beta$), 3.99 (1H, d, *J* 17.7, 1 x furanone COC$\underline{H}_2$O), 4.22 (1H, t, *J* 6.7,

Fmoc C<u>H</u>CH_2O), 4.25 (1H, d, *J* 17.7, 1 x furanone COC<u>H</u>$_2$O), 4.44 (2H, b, Fmoc CHC<u>H</u>$_2$O), 5.11 (1H, b, N<u>H</u>), 7.32 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic), 7.41 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic), 7.58 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic), 7.76 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic). δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 19.1 (<u>C</u>H_3), 47.2 (Fmoc <u>C</u>HCH_2O), 62.7 (furanone <u>C</u>Hα), 67.3 (Fmoc CH<u>C</u>H_2O), 70.8 (furanone CO<u>C</u>H_2O), 77.4 (furanone <u>C</u>Hβ), 120.1 (Fmoc aromatic), 125.0 (Fmoc aromatic), 127.1 (Fmoc aromatic), 127.8 (Fmoc aromatic), 141.4 (Fmoc aromatic), 143.7 (Fmoc aromatic), 156.1 (O<u>C</u>ONH), 211.8 (furanone <u>C</u>O).

(j) Preparation of dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(23)** (Scheme 1A)

Following the general method detailed for cyclisation of **(17)** to **(18)**, diazoketone **(20)** cyclised to give dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(23)** isolated as a white solid, yield 70%, electrospray-MS m/z 338 (MH^+, 75%), analytical HPLC Rt = 14.62 mins (98.9%).

(k) Preparation of dihydro-(4R-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(26)** (Scheme 1A) Following the general method detailed for cyclisation of **(17)** to **(18)**, diazoketone **(21)** cyclised to give dihydro-(4R-amino-[N-Fmoc])-5S-methyl-3(2H)-furanone **(26)** isolated as a white solid, yield 64%, electrospray-MS m/z 338 (MH^+, 100%), analytical HPLC Rt = 14.68 mins (97.5%).

(l) Preparation of dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Fmoc])-3(2H)-furanone **(27)**

Following the general method detailed for cyclisation of **(17)** to **(18)**, diazoketone **(22)** cyclised to give dihydro-(4S-amino-[N-Fmoc])-3(2H)-furanone **(27)** isolated as a white solid, yield 74%, electrospray-MS m/z 324 (MH^+, 75%), analytical HPLC Rt = 13.97 mins (97.6%).

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 3.78 (1H, t, *J* 9.5, 1 x C<u>H</u>β), 3.94 (1H, d, *J* 17.5, 1 x furanone COC<u>H</u>$_2$O), 4.22 (3H, m, , 1 x furanone COC<u>H</u>$_2$O + furanone C<u>H</u>α + Fmoc C<u>H</u>CH_2O), 4.43 (2H, d, *J* 6.3, Fmoc CHC<u>H</u>$_2$O), 4.69 (1H, t, *J* 8.4, 1 x C<u>H</u>β), 5.20 (1H, b, N<u>H</u>), 7.32 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic), 7.41 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic), 7.58 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic), 7.77 (2H, t, *J* 7.4, Fmoc aromatic).

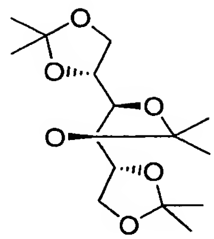
δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$); 47.1 (Fmoc <u>C</u>HCH$_2$O), 56.1 (furanone <u>C</u>Hα), 67.4 (Fmoc CH<u>C</u>H$_2$O), 70.0 (furanone CO<u>C</u>H$_2$O), 70.7 (furanone <u>C</u>Hβ), 120.1 (Fmoc aromatic), 125.0 (Fmoc aromatic), 127.1 (Fmoc aromatic), 127.8 (Fmoc aromatic), 141.4 (Fmoc aromatic), 143.6 (Fmoc aromatic), 156.0 (O<u>C</u>ONH), 211.2 (furanone <u>C</u>O).

(m) Preparation of dihydro-(4R-amino-[N-Fmoc])-3(2H)-furanone **(28)**
Following the general method detailed for cyclisation of **(17)** to **(18)**, diazoketone **(23)** cyclised to give dihydro-(4R-amino-[N-Fmoc])-3(2H)-furanone **(28)** isolated as a white solid, yield 78%, electrospray-MS m/z 324 (MH^+, 100%), analytical HPLC Rt = 14.05 mins (98.2%).

<u>Preparation of Building Block-Linker Constructs</u>
General method for the synthesis of Dihydro-3(2H)-Furanone – Linker Constructs **(29-34)**, following scheme 7.

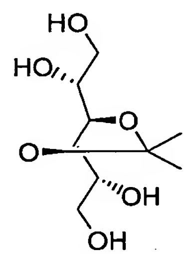
Dihydro-3(2H)-furanone **(18, 24-28),** (1.0eq) was dissolved in a mixture of ethanol / water (7:1 v/v, 10mL per mmole compound) containing sodium acetate trihydrate (1.5eq). 4-[[(hydrazinocarbonyl)amino]methyl]cyclohexanecarboxylic acid trifluoro acetate (mw 329.3, 1.0eq) (see Murphy, A. M., *et al*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc,* **114**, 3156-3157, 1992) was added and the mixture heated under reflux for 2hrs. The mixture was then cooled, poured into dichloromethane (100mL per mmole compound) and water (100mL) added. The organic layer was separated, backwashed with saturated brine (100mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to yield a white solid. Yield 85 – 105% crude weight.
Constructs **(29-34)** were used without further purification

<u>Alternative Route Towards Chiral β-Alkyl Serines</u>
Following the chemistry detailed in scheme 3. Exemplified by the synthesis of (2S, 3S)-β-hydroxynorvaline **(15)** (also termed of (2S, 3S)-β-ethylserine)
(a) Tri-acetone-D-mannitol



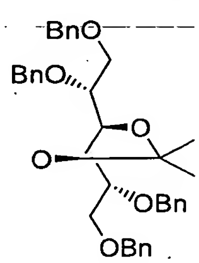
D-Mannitol (49.5g, 0.27mol) was suspended in acetone (600mL, 99.9% purity). To the suspension H_2SO_4 (4.95mL) was added and the mixture shaken at 21°C overnight. The solution was then filtered and the clear solution neutralised with a saturated solution of $NaHCO_3$ until pH=6. The solvent was concentrated *in vacuo*, affording tri-acetone-D-mannitol as a white solid, yield 78g, 96%. Electrospray-MS m/z 303 (MH^+).

(b) 3,4-Isopropylidine-D-mannitol



Tri-acetone-D-mannitol (78g, 0.26mol) was dissolved in the minimum amount of 70% acetic acid (400mL) and stirred in water bath at 42.7°C for 1.5hrs. The solvent was quickly evaporated *in vacuo* to give 3,4-Isopropylidine-D-mannitol as a colourless oil, yield 57.6g, 99.8%. Electrospray-MS m/z 223 (MH^+).

(c) 1,2,5,6-tetra-O-benzyl-3,4-O-isopropylidine-D-mannitol **(35)**



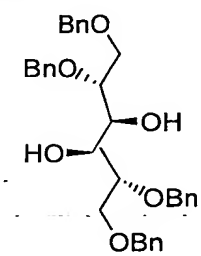
3,4-Isopropylidine-D-mannitol (57.64g, 0.26mol) was dissolved in benzylchloride (543mL). To the stirred solution powdered KOH (500g) was added and the solution heated in an oil bath at 133°C for 2hrs. The mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature and poured into a 3000mL beaker. Ice and water (1400mL) were carefully

added, the mixture extracted with DCM (800mL) and the aqueous phase further extracted with DCM (300mL). The organic extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and the filtered solution concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/heptane (1:15 to 1:10, v/v) to afford compound **(35)** as a colourless oil, yield 77g, 51%.

Electrospray-MS m/z 583 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 29.16mins (91.8%).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 1.35 (6H, s, $C(C\underline{H}_3)_2$), 3.62 (2H, dd, *J* 6, 10, 2 x C<u>H</u>OC), 3.75 (4H, m, 2 x $C\underline{H}_2$OBn), 4.15-4.20 (1H, m, C<u>H</u>OBn), 4.46 (1H, dd , *J* 12.5, 14.5, C<u>H</u>OBn), 4.77 (4H, d, *J* 11.5, 4 x $C\underline{H}_{2A}C_6H_5$), 4.73 (4H, d, *J* 11.5, 4 x $C\underline{H}_{2B}C_6H_5$) and 7.25-7.34 (20H, m, 4 x $C_6\underline{H}_5$).

(d) 1,2,5,6-Tetra-O-benzyl-D-mannitol **(36)**

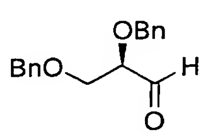


In a 2000mL flask fitted with a condenser compound **(35)** (41.11g, 0.071mol) was dissolved in 70% acetic acid (700mL) and the solution stirred at 100°C in an oil bath for 1.5hrs. After concentration *in vacuo*, the residue was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/heptane (3:7, v/v) to afford compound **(36)** as a pale yellow oil, yield 21.8g, 57%.

Electrospray-MS m/z 543 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 25.8 (100%).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 3.01 (2H, d, *J* 6.0, 2 x OH), 3.65 –3.70 (2H, m, 2 x C<u>H</u>OBn), 3.72-3.78 (4H, m, 2 x $C\underline{H}_2$OBn), 3.93-3.97 (2H, m, 2 x C<u>H</u>OH), 4.55 (4H, s, 2 x $C\underline{H}_2C_6H_5$), 4.73 (2H, d, *J* 11.5, 2 x $C\underline{H}_{2A}C_6H_5$), 4.77 (2H, d, *J* 11.5, 2 x $C\underline{H}_{2B}C_6H_5$) and 7.25-7.34 (20H, m, 4 x C_6H_5).

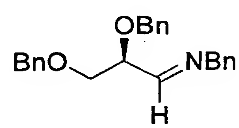
(e) (2R)-2,3-Di-O-benzylglyceraldehyde **(37)**



Compound **(36)** (10.78g, 0.02mol) was dissolved in anhydrous toluene (150mL). While vigorously stirring lead tetraacetate (9.83g, 0.023mol, 1.1eq) was added as a solid and the mixture stirred for 3hrs at room temperature. The mixture was then filtered and the filtered concentrated *in vacuo* to afford compound **(37)** as a colourless oil, yield 10.2g, 95%.

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 3.75-3.83 (2H, m, $C\underline{H}_2OBn$), 3.97 (1H, t, J 4, $C\underline{H}OBn$), 4.55 (2H, d, J 5.5, 2 x $C\underline{H}_{2A}C_6H_5$), 4.70 (2H, d, J 12, 2 x $C\underline{H}_{2B}C_6H_5$), 7.20-7.40 (10H, m, 2 x $C_6\underline{H}_5$) and 9.70 (1H, s, $C\underline{H}O$).

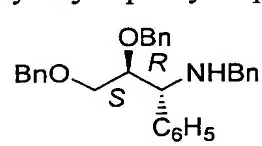
(f) (2S)-N-(2,3-Dibenzyloxypropylidene)benzylamine **(38)**



Benzylamine (4.06mL, 0.037mol, 1eq) was dissolved in anhydrous diethyl ether (150mL) and the solution cooled to 0°C. To a solution of compound **(37)** (9.9g, 0.037mol, 1eq) in anhydrous diethyl ether (100mL) at 0°C, was added anhydrous magnesium sulphate (7.3g) and the solution transferred *via* cannula under argon to the solution of the amine. After stirring for 3 hrs the reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to give compound **(38)** as a crude colourless oil, yield 12.2g, 96%.

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 3.75-3.83 (2H, m, $C\underline{H}_2OBn$), 4.17-4.25 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}OBn$), 4.57 (2H, s, $NC\underline{H}_2C_6H_5$), 4.62 (2H, m, 2 x $C\underline{H}_{2A}C_6H_5$), 4.70 (2H, m, $C\underline{H}_{2B}C_6H_5$), 7.20-7.40 (15H, m, 3 x $C_6\underline{H}_5$) and 7.70 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}N$).

(g) (1R,2S)-N-Benzyl-2,3-dibenzyloxy-1-phenyl-1-propylamine **(39)**

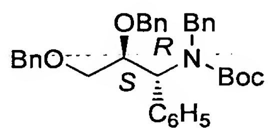


Phenylmagnesium bromide (29.17mL, 0.087mol, 3.0M, 2.5eq) was dissolved in anhydrous diethyl ether (124mL) and the solution cooled to 0°C under argon. A solution of compound **(38)** (12.5g, 0.035mol) in anhydrous diethyl ether (140mL) was transferred *via* cannula to the solution of the phenylmagnesium bromide and the

reaction mixture stirred at room temperature for 2hrs. The solution was poured into an aqueous solution of NH_4Cl (200mL) and extracted with *tert*-butyl methyl ether (2 x 100mL). The combined extracts, dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate, were concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude oil obtained was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/heptane (1:4, v/v) to afford compound **(39)** as a pale yellow oil, yield 8.5g, 56%. Electrospray-MS m/z 438 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 24.0mins (98%).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 2.45 (1H, br s, NH), 3.32 (1H, dd, J 10, 4.5, $C\underline{H}_{2A}OBn$), 3.43 (1H, d, J 13, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}_{2A}NH$) 3.50-3.54 (1H, dd, J 10, 3, $C\underline{H}_{2B}OBn$), 3.55-3.61 (1H, d, J 13, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}_{2B}NH$), 3.65-3.78 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}OBn$), 3.90 (1H, d, J 7, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}NH$), 4.40 (2H, s, $OC\underline{H}_2C_6H_5$), 4.62 (1H, d, J 11, $OC\underline{H}_{2A}C_6H_5$), 4.70 (1H, d, J 11, $OC\underline{H}_{2B}C_6H_5$) and 7.18-7.40 (20H, m, 4 x C_6H_5).

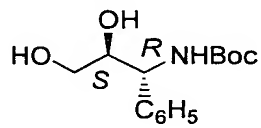
(h) (1R,2S)-N-Benzyl-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-2,3-dibenzyloxy-1-phenyl-1-propylamine **(40)**



Compound **(39)** (9.26g, 0.02mol) was dissolved in dioxane (66mL) and diisopropylamine (0.37mL, 0.0021mol, 0.11eq) was added. To the stirred solution di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (11.25g, 0.0516mol, 2.6eq) was added as a solid and the solution stirred at 50°C in an oil bath overnight. The mixture was treated with *tert*-butyl methyl ether (300mL), washed with 1.0M $KHSO_4$ aqueous solution (60mL) and the organic extracts were dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude oil was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/heptane (1:9, v/v) to afford compound **(40)** as a colourless oil, yield 7.7g, 71%. Electrospray-MS m/z 538 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 30.0mins (95%).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 1.30 (9H, s, $C(CH_3)_3$), 3.44 (1H, dd, J 10, 4.5, $C\underline{H}_{2A}OBn$), 3.61 (1H, dd, J 10, 2, $C\underline{H}_{2B}OBn$), 4.30 (1H, m, $CH_{2A}N$) 4.37 (2H, d, J 12, $OC\underline{H}_{2A}C_6H_5$), 4.43 (2H, d, J 12, $OC\underline{H}_{2B}C_6H_5$), 4.50-4.63 (1H, m, $CH_{2B}N$), 4.85 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}OBn$) 5.25 (1H, d, J 9, $C_6H_5C\underline{HN}$) and 7.00-7.45 (20H, m, 4 x C_6H_5).

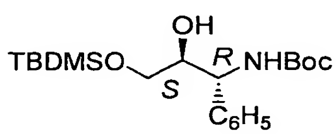
(i) (1R,2S)-N-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-2,3-hydroxy-1-phenyl-1-propylamine **(41)**



Compound **(40)** (7.67g, 0.014mol) was dissolved in anhydrous methanol (80mL). After having flushed the flask with argon, 20%Pd$(OH)_2$/C (10.00g, Degussa type, E101 NE/W, wet) was carefully added and the mixture stirred under H_2 for 48 hrs. The mixture was carefully filtered through a pad of Celite and the catalyst washed with a solution of aqueous methanol (10:100 H_2O:CH_3OH, v/v). The filtered solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/heptane (3:1, v/v) to afford compound **(41)** as a colourless oil, yield 2.7g, 72%. Electrospray-MS m/z 268 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 15.3mins (100%).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 1.44 (9H, s, $C(CH_3)_3$), 2.6 (2H, br s, OH), 3.56 (2H, d, *J* 5.5, $C\underline{H}_2OH$), 3.97 (1H, s, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}NH$), 4.83 (1H, s, $C_6H_5CHC\underline{H}OH$), 5.28 (1H, d, *J* 8, $N\underline{H}$) and 7.20-7.45 (5H, m, $C_6\underline{H}_5$).

(j) (1R,2S)-N-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-3-tert-butyldimethylsilyloxy-2-hydroxy-1-phenyl-1-propylamine **(42)**

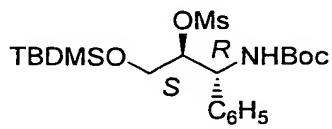


Compound **(41)** (2.67g, 0.01mol) was dissolved in anhydrous DMF (60mL) and stirred under argon. Imidazole (1.5g, 0.022mol, 2.2eq) was added followed by the addition of TBDMSCl (1.66g, 0.011mol, 1.1eq). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The mixture was diluted with ether (240mL), washed with saturated NH_4Cl (120mL) and H_2O (40mL) and the aqueous layer extracted with ether (4 x 100mL). The combined extracts were dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification of the residue by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/heptane (3:1, v/v) afforded compound **(42)** as a colourless oil, yield 3.31g, 87%. Electrospray-MS m/z 382 (MH^+).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 0.05 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_{3A}SiCH_3$), 0.06 (3H, s, $CH_3SiC\underline{H}_{3B}$), 0.89 (9H, s, $Si(CH_3)_3$), 1.39 (9H, br s, $C(C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 2.45 (1H, br s, OH), 3.51 (1H, dd, *J* 10, 7,

TBDMSOC$\underline{H}_{2A}$), 3.65 (1H, dd, *J* 10, 4.5, TBDMSOC$\underline{H}_{2B}$), 3.85 (1H, m, C$\underline{H}$OH), 4.66 (1H, m, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}NH$), 5.45 (1H, br s, N$\underline{H}$) and 7.23-7.35 (5H, m, $C_6\underline{H}_5$).

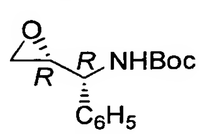
(k) (1R,2S)-N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-3-*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy-2-mesyloxy-1-phenyl-1-propylamine **(43)**



Compound **(42)** (1.30g, 3.40mmol, 1.0eq) was dissolved in anhydrous DCM (30mL). To the solution TEA (0.57mL, 4.09mmol, 1.2eq) was added and the mixture was cooled to 0°C in an ice-water bath. At this temperature and under argon, a solution of MsCl (0.32ml, 4.09mmol, 1.2eq) in anhydrous DCM (3mL) was added. The mixture was stirred for 1.5hrs. The reaction mixture was treated with water (20mL) and extracted with DCM (20mL). The aqueous phase was further extracted with DCM (4 x 60mL) and the combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/heptane (1:3, v/v) affording compound **(43)** as a colourless oil, yield 1.30g, 83%. Electrospray-MS m/z 460 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt: 27.1mins (98%).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 0.06 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_{3A}SiCH_3$), 0.07 (3H, s, $CH_3SiC\underline{H}_{3B}$), 0.91 (9H, s, $Si(CH_3)_3$), 1.42 (9H, br s, $C(C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 2.54 (3H, s, SO_2CH_3), 3.77 (2H, d, *J* 6.0, TBDMSOC$\underline{H}_2$), 4.7 (1H, m, C$\underline{H}$OH), 5.1 (1H, m, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}NH$), 5.4 (1H, br s, NH) and 7.26-7.38 (5H, m, C_6H_5).

(l) (1R,2R)-N-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-2,3-epoxy-1-propylamine **(44)**

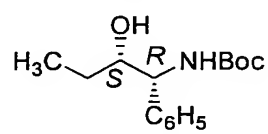


Compound **(43)** (3.79g, 8.26mmol, 1.0eq) was dissolved in THF anhydrous (78mL) and the solution cooled to 0°C in an ice water bath. TBAF (16.52mL, 1.0M sol in THF, 16.52mmol, 2eq) was added dropwise *via* syringe and once the addition was complete the ice bath was removed. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature

overnight and then treated with water (40mL), extracted with diethyl ether (40mL) and the aqueous phase further extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 75mL). The combined extracts were dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with TBME /heptane (1:6 to 2:1, v/v) affording compound **(44)** a white solid, yield 1.0g, 48%.Electrospray-MS m/z 250 (MH^+).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 1.42 (9H, s, $C(CH_3)_3$), 2.50 (1H, dd, *J* 5, 2.2, $CHC\underline{H}_{2A}O$), 2.76 (1H, dd, *J* 5, 4, $CHC\underline{H}_{2B}O$), 3.20-3.30 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}CH_2O$), 4.72 (1H, br s, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}CHO$), 5.00 (1H, br s, NH) and 7.27-7.38 (5H, m, C_6H_5).

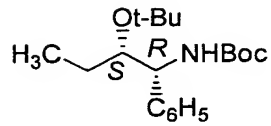
(m) (1R,2S)-*N*-tert-butoxycarbonyl-2-hydroxy-1-phenyl-1-butylamine **(45)**



Copper(I)iodide (0.574g, 3.01mmol, 5eq) was dispersed in anhydrous diethyl ether (17mL). After cooling the suspension to –35°C under argon, CH_3Li in diethyl ether (3.76mL, 1.6M, 6.02mmol, 10eq) was added dropwise. After stirring at –35°C for 30 mins a solution of compound **(44)** (0.15g, 0.60mmol, 1.0eq) dissolved in diethyl ether (1.5mL) was added dropwise to the solution of the organocuprate and the reaction mixture was stirred at –35°C for 1.5 hrs. Ethyl acetate (12.5mL) was added followed by the careful addition of a saturated solution of NH_4Cl (10mL) and water (3mL). The mixture was allowed to warm up to room temperature and the organic phase extracted. The aqueous phase was further extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 15mL) and the combined extracts dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude oil was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with TBME /heptane (2:3, v/v) affording compound **(45)** as a white solid, yield 0.14g, 88%. Electrospray-MS m/z 266 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 17.6mins (100%).

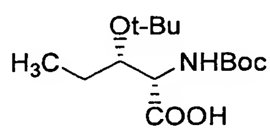
δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 0.97 (3H, t, *J* 7.5, $C\underline{H}_3CH_2$), 1.10-1.25 (1H, m, $CH_3C\underline{H}_{2A}$), 1.25-1.50 (1H, m, $CH_3C\underline{H}_{2B}$), 1.50 (9H, s, $C(CH_3)_3$), 3.78 (1H, br s, $C\underline{H}OH$), 4.73 (1H, br s, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}NH$), 5.28 (1H, br s, NH) and 7.25-7.38 (5H, m, C_6H_5).

(n) (1R,2S)-N-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-2-*tert*-butoxy-1-phenyl-1-butylamine **(46)**



In a sealed tube, compound **(45)** (0.114g, 0.43mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DCM (11mL). Whilst stirring was maintained, the tube was immersed in a dry ice-acetone bath and cooled to -60°C. Isobutylene (11mL) was condensed into the tube and methyltriflate (55μL) was carefully added. The tube was capped tightly and the bath removed to allow the reaction to proceed at room temperature for 4 days. The tube was cooled to –60°C, the lid removed and then the bath removed to allow the excess of isobutylene to slowly evaporate whilst warming up to room temperature. At about 10°C, TEA (0.7mL) was added to neutralise the excess acid. The residue obtained after removal of the solvents *in vacuo* was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/heptane (2:8, v/v) affording compound **(46)** as a white solid, yield 0.02g, 14.% Electrospray-MS m/z 322 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 24.1mins (90%). δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 0.84 (3H, t, *J* 7.5, $C\underline{H}_3CH_2$), 1.15-1.30 (1H, m, $CH_3C\underline{H}_{2A}$) 1.24 (9H, s, $CHOC(C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 1.35-1.40 (1H, m, $CH_3C\underline{H}_{2B}$), 1.41 (9H, s, $CO_2C(C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 3.72 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}O(CH_3)_3$), 4.78 (1H, m, $C_6H_5C\underline{H}NH$), 5.15 (1H, br s, $N\underline{H}$) and 7.22-7.38 (5H, m, C_6H_5).

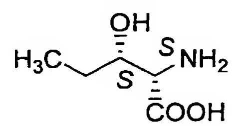
(o) (2S,3S)-N-tert-Butoxycarbonyl-β-*tert*-butoxy-norvaline **(47)**



Compound **(46)** (0.024g, 0.074mmol, 1eq), was dissolved in a mixture of $CCl_4/CH_3CN/H_2O$ (1:1:2, v/v/v, 2.4mL). To the stirred biphasic solution $NaHCO_3$ (0.104g, 1.25mmol, 16.9eq) was added as a solid, followed by the careful addition of $NaIO_4$ (0.284g, 1.33mmol, 18eq). After 10 minutes $RuCl_3.3H_2O$ (1.5mg, 7.23μmol, 0.1eq) was added and the reaction mixture stirred for 48hrs. The solution was treated with EtOAc (15mL) and acidified to pH =3 by dropwise addition of citric acid (10%). The organic phase was further extracted with EtOAc (3 x 15mL) and the combined extracts were dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting

with a gradient of MeOH /CH_3Cl (0.1:10 to 1.0:10, v/v) to give compound **(47)** as a white solid, yield 0.009g, 42%.
Electrospray-MS m/z 290 (MH^+).

(p) (2S,3S)-β-Hydroxy-norvaline **(15)**



Compound **(47)** (9mg, 0.03mmol) was dissolved in a solution HCl in dioxane (1mL, 4.0M). After stirring for 3hrs at room temperature, the solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was lyophilised using CH_3CN/H_2O (4:1, v/v) to yield (2S,3S)-β-hydroxynorvaline (15) as a white solid, 3.0 mg, 75%.Electrospray-MS m/z 134 (MH^+). δ_H (500 MHz; CD_3OD) 1.00 (3H, t, *J* 7.5, C<u>H</u>$_3$CH$_2$), 1.50-1.65 (2H, m, CH$_3$C<u>H</u>$_2$), 3.88-3.95 (1H, m, C<u>H</u>OH) and 3.98 (1H, d, *J* 3, C$_6$H$_5$C<u>H</u>NH$_2$).

<u>Threonine Chemistry Towards 2,4,5-trisubstituted Dihydro-3(2H)-furanones</u>
Following the chemistry detailed in scheme 4.

(a) N-benzyloxycarbonyl-O-*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl-L-threonine **(48)**
A solution of *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (65g, 0.431mol) in DCM (300ml) was added to a stirred solution of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-threonine (30.3g, 0.12mol) and imidazole (19.57g, 0.287mol). A precipitate formed immediately and stirring was continued for 60hr. The solvent was removed *in vacuo*, the residue taken up in THF and water (3:1, 400ml), and vigorously stirred for 15min. The THF was removed *in vacuo*, the product extracted into EtOAc (3 x 100ml), the combined organic layers washed with brine(2 x 100ml) and dried over $MgSO_4$. Purification by crystallisation from EtOAc and heptane gave compound **(48)** as a white solid, 39.15g (89%).
Electrospray-MS m/z 368.2 (MH^+).

(b) N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-O-*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl-L-threonine N,O-dimethylhydroxyl amide **(49)**
Isobutyl chloroformate (15.07ml, 0.116mol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-O-*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl-L-threonine **(48)** (38.65g, 0.105mol)

and N-methylmorpholine (11.58ml, 0.106mmol) in THF (150ml). Another equivalent of N-methylmorpholine (11.58ml, 0.106mmol) was added and stirring continued for 30min before N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride (12.32g, 0.126mol) was added. After stirring overnight the solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (3 x 180ml) and water / saturated brine (1:1, v/v, 180ml). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.1M HCl (2 x 180ml), 5% Na_2CO_3 (2 x 180ml), saturated brine (180ml) and dried over Na_2SO_4. Purification by flash silica chromatography eluting with EtOAc / heptane (3:7, v/v) yielded compound **(49)** as a colourless viscous oil, 32.29g (75%). Electrospray-MS m/z 411.2 (MH^+).

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$ at 398K) –0.02 (3H, s, $Si(CH_3)_2$), 0.01 (3H, s, $Si(CH_3)_2$), 0.85 (9H, s, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 1.21 (3H, d, *J* 6.1, $CHC\underline{H}_3$), 3.21 (3H, s, NCH_3), 3.76 (3H, s, OCH_3), 4.24 (1H, br m, $C\underline{H}CH_3$), 4.56 (1H, br d, *J* 9.5, $C\underline{H}CHCH_3$), 5.09 (1H, d, *J* 12.2, benzylic H_a), 5.13 (1H, d, *J* 12.2, benzylic H_b), 5.60 (1H, d, *J* 9.5, NH), 7.37 (5H, m, Ph).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$ at 398K) –5.10 ($Si(CH_3)_2$), -4.67 ($Si(CH_3)_2$), 17.95 ($Si\underline{C}(CH_3)_3$), 21.24 ($CH\underline{C}H_3$), 25.73 ($SiC(\underline{C}H_3)_3$), 57.15 (NMe), 61.31 ($\underline{C}HCHCH_3$), 66.92 ($Ph\underline{C}H_2$), 68.19 (OMe), 77.36 ($CH\underline{C}HCH_3$), 128.09 (Ar), 128.50 (Ar), 136.43 (Ar 4°), 156.83 (NHCO), 170.47 (NMeCO).

(c) N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-O-*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl-L-threonine aldehyde **(50)**

Lithium aluminium hydride (1M in Et_2O, 17.1ml, 17.1mmol) was added to a stirred solution of compound **(49)** (7g, 17.1mmol) in tBME (350ml) at –30°C. The reaction mixture was removed from the cooling bath and allowed to warm to room temperature. After stirring for 30min, a white precipitate had formed, and the reaction mixture was quenched by the careful dropwise addition of 0.1M H_2SO_4 until the effervescence stopped. The product was extracted into TBME (3 x 350ml) from ice cold 0.05M H_2SO_4 (600ml), the combined organic layers washed with brine (300ml) and dried over Na_2SO_4. Purification by flash silica chromatography eluting with EtOAc / heptane (2:8, v/v) yielded aldehyde **(50)** as a colourless viscous oil, 1.47g (25%). Electrospray-MS m/z 352.2 (MH^+).

(d) Ethyl trimethylsilyldiazoacetate

(preparation obtained from Shuji Kanemasa, personal communication)

Trimethylsilyl trifluoromethanesulphonate (9.7ml, 53.6mmol) was slowly added *via* a syringe to a stirred solution of ethyl diazoacetate (5.3ml, 50.4mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (8.7ml, 49.9mmol) in diethyl ether (300ml) at 0°C. After 1hr the temperature was increased to room temperature and stirring continued for a further 1hr. The precipitate formed was removed by filtration and the solid washed with diethyl ether (50ml). The filtrate and washing was combined, washed with brine (70ml) and dried over Na_2SO_4. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified by vacuum distillation to yield ethyl trimethylsilyldiazoacetate as a yellow liquid, 2.48g (26%); bp 90-95°C at 25mmHg. υ_{max} cm^{-1} 2091.9, 1688.9.

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$ at 398K) 0.25 (9H, s, $Si(CH_3)_3$), 1.25 (3H, t, *J* 7.1, $C\underline{H_2}CH_3$), 4.12 (2H, q, *J* 7.2, $CH_2\underline{C}H_3$).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$ at 398K) −1.51 ($Si(CH_3)_3$), 14.41 ($CH_2\underline{C}H_3$), 60.59 ($\underline{C}H_2CH_3$), 169.38 ($\underline{C}O_2Et$).

(e) 4R-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-3S-hydroxy-5R-methyltetrahydrofuran-2R-carboxylic acid ethyl ester **(51)**

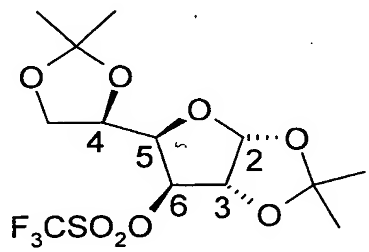
Tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1M in THF, 5.03ml, 5.03mmol) was added over 30min to a vigorously stirred solution of aldehyde **(50)** (1.47g, 4.19mmol) and ethyl trimethylsilyldiazoacetate (1.56g, 8.38mmol) in diethyl ether (45ml) at 0°C. After3hr the product was extracted into tBME (2 x 70ml and 1 x 40ml) from water (70ml), the combined organic layers washed with brine (2 x 70ml) and dried over Na_2SO_4. Purification by repeated flash silica chromatography eluting with EtOAc / heptane (6:4, v/v) yielded 4R-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3S-hydroxy-5R-methyltetrahydrofuran-2R-carboxylic acid ethyl ester **(51)** as a pale yellow viscous oil that solidified on standing, 0.524g (39%); mp 90-92°C. Electrospray-MS m/z 324.2 (MH^+). HRMS $C_{16}H_{21}O_6NNa$ requires *M*, 346.1267, found: MNa^+ 346.1272 (δ 1.48ppm).

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$ at 398K) 1.17 (3H, d, *J* 6.3, $CHC\underline{H_3}$), 1.25 (3H, t, *J* 7.1, $CH_2C\underline{H_3}$), 3.18 (1H, br s, OH), 3.73 (1H, br dd, *J* 3.3, 9.2, furanone 4), 4.03 (1H, s br, furanone 2), 4.11 (1H, br m, furanone 5), 4.21 (2H, q, *J* 7, $C\underline{H_2}CH_3$), 4.76 (1H, br s, furanone 3), 5.11 (1H, d, *J* 12.2, benzylic H_a), 5.13 (1H, d, *J* 12.2, benzylic H_b), 5.62 (1H, d, *J* 9.6, NH), 7.34 (5H, m, Ph).

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$ at 398K) 14.43 ($CH_2\underline{C}H_3$), 19.98 ($CH\underline{C}H_3$), 58.99 (furanone 4), 61.29 ($\underline{C}H_2CH_3$), 67.32 ($Ph\underline{C}H_2$), 68.70 (furanone 3), 68.85 (furanone 5), 77.39 (furanone 2), 128.07 (Ar), 128.26 (Ar), 128.57 (Ar), 136.18 (Ar 4°), 157.74 (NHCO), 166.79 (ester CO).

Sugar Chemistry Route Towards Furanone Analogues

Following the chemistry detailed in scheme 5.



(53)

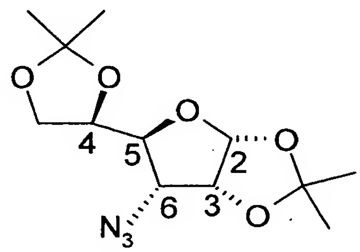
(a) Trifluoro-methanesulfonic acid-5(*R*)-(2,2-dimethyl-[1,3]dioxolan-4(*R*)-yl)-2,2-dimethyl-tetrahydro-furo[2(*R*),3-*d*(*R*)][1,3]dioxol-6(*S*)-yl ester **(53).**

1,2,5,6-Diisopropylidene-*D*-glucose (5.00g, 19.21mmol) **(52)** was dissolved in dry dichloromethane (100mL) and stirred at 0 ^{0}C under a nitrogen atmosphere. Anhydrous pyridine (1.67g, 1.71mL, 21.13mmol) was added, followed by the dropwise addition of trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride (5.96g, 3.55mL, 21.13mmol) which resulted in the formation of a yellow solution. The solution was stirred at 0 ^{0}C for a further 1 h and then at room temperature overnight. Tlc analysis indicated all the starting material had been consumed, therefore, the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (40mL) was washed with 2.0M HCl solution and brine, separated, dried ($MgSO_4$), and evaporated *in vacuo*. Column chromatography eluting with heptane / ethyl acetate (8:1, v/v) afforded **(53)** as an unstable white solid (6.48g, 86%). R_f 0.51 heptane / ethyl acetate (8:1, v/v). Electrospray-MS m/z 392.3 (MH^+). δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$ at 298 K) 1.31 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3$), 1.33 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3$), 1.42 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3$), 1.51 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3$), 3.96 (1H, dd, *J* 3.7, 8.3, C$\underline{H}$), 4.15 (1H, dd, *J* 5.5, 8.3, C$\underline{H}$'), 4.19

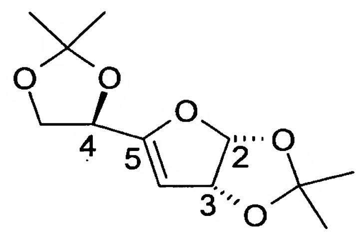
(2H, m, H-4 and H-6), 4.76 (1H, app.d, *J* 3.6, H-3), 5.26 (1H, app.d, *J* 1.2, H-5), 5.98 (1H, d, *J* 3.6, H-2).

δ_C (125 MHz, $CDCl_3$ at 298 K) 24.8, 26.2, 26.5 and 26.8 (2xC($\underline{C}H_3$)$_2$), 67.6 (C$\underline{H}_2$), 79.9 and 71.7 (C-4 and C-6), 83.2 (C-3), 88.2 (C-5), 105.0 (C-2), 109.8 and 113.1 (2x$\underline{C}$(CH_3)$_2$), 118.1 (q, $\underline{C}F_3$).

δ_F (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$ at 298 K) –75.1 (C$\underline{F}_3$).



(54)



(54b)

(b) 6(*R*)-Azido-5(*S*)(2,2-dimethyl-[1,3]dioxolan-4(*R*)-yl)-2,2-dimethyl-tetrahydro-furo[2(*R*),3-*d*(*R*)][1,3]dioxole **(54)** and 5-(2,2-Dimethyl-[1,3]dioxolan-4(*R*)-yl)-2,2-dimethyl-3*a*,6*a*-dihydro-furo[2(*R*),3-*d*(*R*)][1,3]dioxole **(54b).**

Triflate **(53)** (2.59g, 6.61mmol) was dissolved in dry DMF (50mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere, while sodium azide (686mg, 10.55mmol) was carefully added. The solution was heated to 50 ^{0}C for 4 h and tlc analysis revealed the consumption of the starting material. The solvent was then removed *in vacuo*. Ethyl acetate (50mL) was added and the solution was washed with brine, separated, dried ($MgSO_4$) and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using the eluent heptane / ethyl acetate (4:1, v/v) to afford **(54)** as a colourless oil (900mg, 48%), together with **(54b)** as a white solid (645mg, 40%).

(54): R_f 0.28 heptane / ethyl acetate (4:1, v/v). HRMS $C_{12}H_{19}O_5N_3Na$ requires *M*, 308.1217, found: MNa^+, 308.1192. (δ - 2.49 ppm).

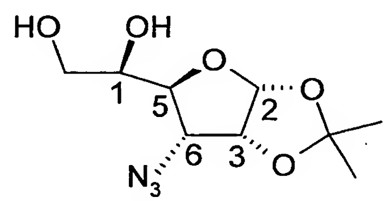
δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$ at 298 K) 1.34 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.36 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.47 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.56 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 3.50 (1H, dd, *J* 4.8, 9.1, H-6), 3.97 (1H, dd, *J* 5.5, 8.5, C$\underline{H}$), 4.01 (1H, dd, *J* 6.0, 9.1, H-5), 4.12 (1H, app.t, *J* 8.5, C$\underline{H}$'), 4.17 (1H, dd, *J* 6.0, 12.0, H-4), 4.71 (1H, app.t, *J* 4.2, H-3), 5.77 (1H, d, *J* 3.6, H-2).

δ_C (125 MHz, $CDCl_3$ at 298 K) 25.1, 26.3, 26.4 and 26.5 (2xC($\underline{C}H_3$)$_2$), 62.6 (C-6), 66.8 (C$\underline{H}_2$), 75.8 (C-4), 78.1 (C-5), 80.6 (C-3), 103.4 (C-2), 110.1 and 113.2 (2x$\underline{C}$(CH_3)$_2$).

(54b): R_f 0.42 heptane / ethyl acetate (4:1, v/v).

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$ at 298 K) 1.37 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.42 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.45 (6H, s, 2xC$\underline{H}_3$), 3.95 (1H, dd, *J* 6.1, 7.8, C$\underline{H}$), 4.13 (1H, app.t, *J* 7.8, C$\underline{H}$'), 4.57 (1H, app.t, *J* 6.1, H-4), 5.23 (1H, d, *J* 0.8, C=C$\underline{H}$), 5.28 (1H, app.d, *J* 4.4, H-3), 6.03 (1H, d, *J* 5.2, H-2).

δ_C (125 MHz, $CDCl_3$ at 298 K) 25.5, 26.2, 27.9 and 28.2 (2xC($\underline{C}H_3$)$_2$), 67.0 (C$\underline{H}_2$), 71.3 (C-4), 83.4 (C-3), 99.0 (C=$\underline{C}$H), 106.6 (C-2), 110.3 and 112.3 (2x$\underline{C}$(CH_3)$_2$), 160.1 (C-5).



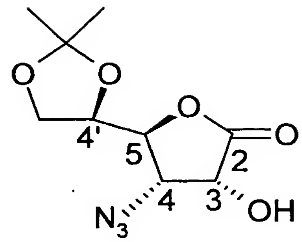
(55)

(b) 1-(6(*R*)-Azido-2,2-dimethyl-tetrahydro-furo[2(*R*),3-*d*(*R*)][1,3]dioxol-5(*S*)-yl)-ethane-1(*R*),2-diol **(55).**

Compound **(54)** (1.03g, 3.61mmol) was dissolved in AcOH:MeOH:H_2O (40:50:60mL) and stirred at 50 ^{0}C for 17 h, then solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography using heptane / ethyl acetate (1:1, v/v) as the eluent to afford **(55)** as a pale yellow solid (868mg, 98%). R_f 0.12 heptane / ethyl acetate (1:1, v/v).

δ_H (500 MHz, CD_3OD at 298 K) 1.52 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 1.98 (3H, s, C$\underline{H}_3$), 3.50 (3H, m, C$\underline{H}_2$ and H-6), 3.83 (1H, m, H-1), 4.13 (1H, dd, *J* 4.1, 9.4, H-5), 4.78 (1H, app.t, *J* 4.1, H-3), 5.78 (1H, d, *J* 3.6, H-2).

δ_C (125 MHz, CD_3OD at 298 K) 26.8 (C($\underline{C}H_3$)$_2$), 61.5 (C-6), 63.9 ($\underline{C}H_2$), 72.8 (C-1), 79.1 (C-5), 82.3 (C-3), 105.6 (C-4), 114.0 ($\underline{C}$(CH_3)$_2$).



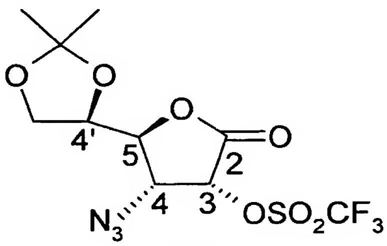
(56)

(c) 4(*R*)-Azido-5(*S*)-(2,2-dimethyl-[1,3]dioxolan-4(*R*)-yl)-3(*R*)-hydroxy-dihydro-furan-2-one **(56).**

TFA (2mL) and water (40mL) were added to compound **(54)** (1.18g, 4.14mmol) and the solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was then evaporated *in vacuo* to produce a colourless oil. The crude oil was then dissolved in water (34mL) and stirred at 0 ^{0}C, while barium carbonate (1.22g, 6.15mmol) was added, followed by the dropwise addition of bromine (727mg, 0.23mL, 4.55mmol). The yellow solution was stirred at 0 ^{0}C for 2 h and then for a further 2 h at room temperature. It was then filtered through celite and compressed air was bubbled through until the solution had been decolourised. The water was then removed *in vacuo* to afford a white solid. This white solid was pre-dried with acetone (2x50mL), before being suspended in acetone (100mL) and stirred at room temperature. 10-Camphorsulfonyl acid (192mg, 0.83mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred overnight. Tlc analysis indicated no change therefore another 0.2 equivalents of 10-Camphorsulfonyl acid (192mg, 0.83mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred at 50 ^{0}C for 4 h. The solution was filtered and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using heptane / ethyl acetate (2:1, v/v) as the eluent to afford **(56)** as a white solid (680mg, 68%). R_f 0.34 heptane / ethyl acetate (2:1, v/v). HRMS $C_9H_{13}O_5N_3Na$ requires *M*, 266.0742, found: MNa^+, 266.0700. (δ - 4.21 ppm).

δ_H (500 MHz, DMSO at 298 K) 1.28 (3H, s, C<u>H</u>$_3$), 1.39 (3H, s, C<u>H</u>$_3$), 3.82 (1H, dd, *J* 5.5, 8.9, C<u>H</u>), 4.06 (1H, dd, *J* 6.9, 8.9, C<u>H</u>'), 4.24 (1H, app.d, *J* 5.1, H-4'), 4.29 (1H, dd, *J* 5.5, 12.0, H-5), 4.46 (1H, app.d, *J* 6.1, H-4), 4.82 (1H, app.t, *J* 6.5, H-3), 6.65 (1H, d, *J* 6.9, O<u>H</u>).

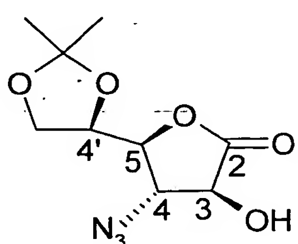
δ_C (125 MHz, DMSO at 298 K) 24.7 and 26.1 (C($\underline{C}H_3$)$_2$), 59.5 (C-4), 65.3 ($\underline{C}H_2$), 68.5 (C-3), 73.6 (C-5), 81.2 (C-4'), 109.7 ($\underline{C}(CH_3)_2$), 174.5 (C-2).



(57)

(d) Trifluoro-methanesulfonic acid 4(*R*)-azido-5(*S*)-(2,2-dimethyl-[1,3]dioxolan-4(*R*)-yl)-2-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3(*R*)-yl ester **(57).**

Compound **(56)** (500mg, 2.06mmol) was dissolved in dry dichloromethane (50mL) and stirred at 0 ^{0}C under a nitrogen atmosphere. Anhydrous pyridine (176mg, 0.18mL, 2.27mmol) was added, followed by the dropwise addition of trifluoromethane sulfonic anhydride (640mg, 0.38mL, 2.27mmol). The solution was stirred at room temperature overnight, during which time it turned dark yellow in colour. The solution was then washed with 2.0M HCl, brine, separated, dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*. The yellow oil was purified by column chromatography (2:1 heptane-ethyl acetate) to afford **(57)** (402 mg, 52%) which was immediately reacted on as it was found to be very unstable.



(58)

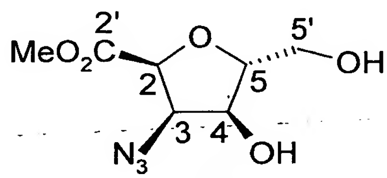
(e) 4(*R*)-Azido-5(*S*)-(2,2-dimethyl-[1,3]dioxolan-4(*R*)-yl)-3(*S*)-hydroxy-dihydro-furan-2-one **(58).**

Triflate **(57)** (143mg, 0.38mmol) was dissolved in dry DMF (2.2mL) and stirred at room temperature. The sodium salt of trifluoroacetic acid (156mg, 1.15mmol) was

added and the solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. Tlc analysis revealed no change therefore the solution was heated to 60 ^{0}C for 2 days. Then methanol (1mL) was added and the reaction was stirred overnight. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (30mL), washed with water and brine, separated, dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography using heptane / ethyl acetate (2:1, v/v) as the eluent to afford **(58)** as a white solid (24mg, 26%). R_f 0.24 heptane / ethyl acetate (2:1, v/v).

δ_H (500 MHz, DMSO at 298 K) 1.29 (3H, s, C<u>H</u>$_3$), 1.39 (3H, s, C<u>H</u>$_3$), 3.84 (1H, dd, *J* 4.6, 8.9, C<u>H</u>), 4.11 (1H, dd, *J* 6.9 and 8.9, C<u>H</u>'), 4.14 (2H, m, H-4' and H-5), 4.29 (1H, dd, *J* 4.6, 9.9, H-4), 4.44 (1H, m, H-3), 6.52 (1H, d, *J* 7.1, O<u>H</u>).

δ_C (125 MHz, DMSO at 298 K) 24.8 and 25.9 (C(<u>C</u>H$_3$)$_2$), 64.6 (C-4), 65.3 (<u>C</u>H$_2$), 71.7 (C-3), 74.4 (C-5), 76.8 (C-4'), 109.3 (<u>C</u>(CH$_3$)$_2$), 172.7 (C-2).



(59)

(f) 3(*R*)-Azido-4(*S*)-hydroxy-5(*R*)-hydroxymethyl-tetrahydro-furan-2(*S*)-carboxylic acid methyl ester **(59).**

Acetyl chloride (46mg, 0.04mL, 0.59mmol) and dry methanol (4mL) were simultaneously added to the stirred triflate **(57)** (185mg, 0.49mmol) at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere. The resultant pale yellow solution was stirred for a further 20 h at room temperature and subsequent tlc analysis revealed the consumption of the starting material **(57)**. Sodium hydrogen carbonate (49mg, 0.58mmol) was added and the solution was then pre-absorbed onto silica. Purification by column chromatography using ethyl acetate / heptane (2:1, v/v) as the eluent afforded **(59)** as a white solid (73mg, 68%). R_f 0.13 ethyl acetate / heptane (2:1, v/v).

δ_H (500 MHz, CD_3OD at 298 K) 3.59 (1H, dd, *J* 3.6, 12.5, H-5'), 3.78 (3H, s, $CO_2C\underline{H}_3$), 3.82 (1H, dd, *J* 1.7, 12.5, H-5'), 3.90 (1H, app.dt, *J* 3.0, 8.4, H-5), 4.35 (1H, app.t, *J* 4.8, H-3), 4.44 (1H, dd, *J* 5.1, 8.4, H-4), 4.70 (1H, d, *J* 4.6, H-2).
δ_C (125 MHz, CD_3OD at 298 K) 52.6 ($CO_2\underline{C}H_3$), 61.8 (C-5'), 67.0 (C-3), 73.2 (C-4), 79.1 (C-5), 83.7 (C-2), 171.5 (C-2').

Chemistry Towards P2 Hybrid Aminoacids

The general chemistry depicted in scheme 6 will shortly be published in full in the academic literature, by its inventors CS Dexter and RFW Jackson at the University of Newcastle, England.

(a) General Procedure for the zinc coupling reactions

(b) Zinc activation

Zinc dust (150mg, 2.3mmol, 3.0eq, Aldrich) was weighed into a 25mL round bottom flask with a side arm and fitted with a three way tap. The zinc powder was heated with a heat gun under vacuum and the flask was flushed with nitrogen and evacuated and flushed a further three times. With the flask filled with nitrogen, dry DMF (1mL) was added. Trimethylsilylchloride (30µl, 0.23mmol, 0.3eq) was added and the zinc slurry was vigorously stirred for a further 30mins.

(c) Zinc insertion; N-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-3-iodozinc-L-alanine methyl ester **(61)**
N-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-3-iodo-L-alanine methyl ester (247mg, 0.75mmol, 1.0eq) dissolved in dry DMF (0.5mL) was added dropwise, *via* cannula, to the activated zinc slurry at 0°C prepared as described above. The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm up to room temperature and stirred for 1hr to give the organozinc reagent.

(d) $CuBr.SMe_2$ preparation

Whilst the zinc insertion reaction was in progress, $CuBr.SMe_2$ (20mg, 0.1mmol, 0.13eq) was weighed into a 25ml round bottom flask fitted with a three way tap and dried "gently" with a heat gun under vacuum until $CuBr.SMe_2$ changed appearance from a brown powder to give a light green powder. Dry DMF (0.5mL) was then added followed by addition of the electrophile (either 1-bromo-2-methylbut-2-ene, toluene-4-

sulfonic acid-(E)-2-methyl-but-2-enyl ester or 1-bromo-2,3-dimethylbut-2-ene) (1.0mmol, 1.3eq). The reaction mixture was then cooled to -15°C.

(e) Coupling Reaction

Stirring of the organozinc reagent solution was stopped to allow the zinc powder to settle and the supernatant was carefully removed *via* cannula (care taken to avoid transferring too much zinc powder) and added dropwise to the solution of electrophile and copper catalyst. The cooling bath was removed and the solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. Ethyl acetate (20mL) was added and stirring was continued for a further 15mins. The reaction mixture was transferred to a separating funnel and a further aliquot of EtOAc (30mL) was added. The organic phase was washed successively with 1M $Na_2S_2O_3$ (20mL), water (2 x 20mL), brine (40mL), dried over sodium sulphate and filtered. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the crude product purified by flash chromatography on silica gel as described.

(f) Hydrogenation of alkene

The alkene (1.0mmol) was dissolved in ethanol (10mL), 10% palladium on carbon (80mg) added and hydrogen introduced. Once the reaction had been deemed to have reached completion, the hydrogen was removed, the reaction filtered through Celite and the catalyst washed with ethanol (30mL). The combined organic filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and the alkane used directly in the subsequent reaction.

(g) Saponification of methyl ester

The methyl ester (1.0mmol) was dissolved in THF (6mL) and whilst stirring, a solution of LiOH (1.2mmol, 1.2eq) in water (6mL) was added dropwise. Once the reaction was deemed to have reached completion, the THF was removed *in vacuo* and diethyl ether (10mL) added to the residue. The reaction mixture was then acidified with 1.0M HCl until pH =3. The organic phase was then removed and the aqueous layer extracted with diethyl ether (2 x 10mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to give the carboxylic acid used directly in the subsequent reaction.

(h) Removal of N-Boc protecting group

The N-Boc protected material (1.0mmol) was dissolved in DCM (2mL) and cooled to 0°C. Trifluoroacetic acid (2mL) was added dropwise and when the reaction was deemed to have reached completion, the solvents were removed *in vacuo* to yield the amine used directly in the subsequent reaction. Alternatively, the N-Boc protected material (1.0mmol) was cooled to 0°C and 4M HCl in dioxane (5mL) added dropwise and when the reaction was deemed to have reached completion, the solvents were removed *in vacuo* to yield the amine used directly in the subsequent reaction.

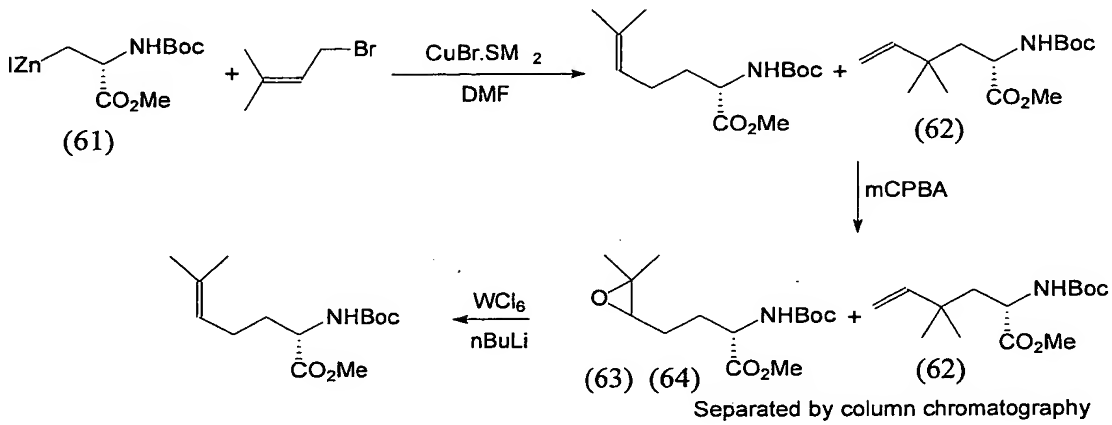
(i) Fmoc protection of amine

The amine (1.0mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (2mL) was cooled to 0°C and 10% sodium carbonate (2.2mmol, 2.2eq, 2mL) added. The biphasic reaction mixture was stirred vigorously and Fmoc-Cl (1.1mmol, 1.1eq) added. Once the reaction was deemed to have reached completion, diethyl ether (10mL) added and the reaction mixture acidified to pH = 3 with 1M HCl. The organic phase was removed and the aqueous layer extracted with diethyl ether (2 x 10mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulphate, filtered, the solvent removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified by flash chromatography over silica gel.

Example Synthesis 1

Preparation of 2S-2-(9*H*-fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,4-dimethylhexanoic acid **(68)**

The following scheme explains how optically pure (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,4-dimethyl-hex-5-enoic acid methyl ester **(62)** was prepared and isolated.



(a) 2S-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4, 4-dimethyl-hex-5-enoic acid methyl ester **(62)**, 2S-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-4-(2S-3,3-dimethyl-oxiranyl)-butyric acid methyl ester **(63)** and 2S-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-4-(2R-3,3-dimethyl-oxiranyl)-butyric acid methyl ester **(64)**

Following the general procedure for zinc coupling reactions, 1-bromo-3-methylbut-2-ene (115μL, 1.0mmol) was coupled to compound **(61)** (247mg, 0.75mmol) in the presence of CuBr.SMe_2 (20mg, 0.1mmol) to give a residue which was purified by flash column chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc / 40:60 petroleum ether (1:9, v/v). Fractions were pooled and reduced *in vacuo* to give a mixture of regioisomers (2:1 formal SN2' *vs* SN2), inseparable by column chromatography, as a colourless oil, yield 190mg, 93%.
To a mixture of regioisomers (190mg, 0.7mmol) in chloroform (3mL) was added dropwise over 5mins, 3-chloroperbenzoic acid (156mg, 85% pure, 0.8mmol, 1.1eq) in chloroform (2mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for a further 2hr. The reaction mixture was then washed successively with 1M $Na_2S_2O_5$ (5mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (5mL) and brine (10mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, the solvent removed *in vacuo* and the residue was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc / 40:60 petroleum ether (2:8, v/v). Three products were obtained; compound **(62)** was eluted first and further elution afforded an inseparable mixture of compound **(63)** and compound **(64)**. Fractions of the initial component were pooled and reduced *in vacuo* to give 2S-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-4,4-dimethyl-hex-5-enoic acid methyl ester **(62)** as a clear oil,

yield 93mg, 49%. Electrospray-MS m/z 272 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 21.45mins (95%), HRMS $C_{10}H_{17}O_4N$ requires *M*, 215.1158, found: M^+-C_4H_8 215.1152 (δ - 2.8 ppm); IR (cap. film)/cm^{-1} 3369 (s), 3084 (m), 2965 (s), 1748 (s), 1715 (s), 1517 (s), 1167 (s), 1007 (s), 914 (s)

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$) 1.06 (6H, s, CH_2=CHC($C\underline{H}_3$)$_2$), 1.42 (9H, s, C($C\underline{H}_3$)$_3$) 1.55 (1H, dd, *J* 14, 9, CH_2=CHC(CH_3)$_2$$C\underline{H}_{2A}$), 1.82 (1H, dd, *J* 14, 3, CH_2=CHC(CH_3)$_2$$C\underline{H}_{2B}$), 3.69 (3H, s, OCH_3), 4.30 (1H, m, NHC$\underline{H}$$CO_2CH_3$), 4.83 (1H, br d, *J* 7, NH), 4.97 (2H, m, $C\underline{H}_2$=CH) and 5.78 (1H, dd, J_{trans} 17.5, J_{cis} 11, CH_2=C$\underline{H}$)
δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$) 26.93 (CH_2=CHC($\underline{C}H_3$)$_2$), 28.34 (C($\underline{C}H_3$)$_3$), 36.33 (CH_2=CHC(CH_3)$_2$$\underline{C}H_2$), 45.06 ($CH_2$=CH$\underline{C}$($CH_3$)$_2$), 51.25 (NH$\underline{C}HCO_2CH_3$), 52.15 ($OCH_3$), 79.77 ($\underline{C}$($CH_3$)$_3$), 111.39 ($\underline{C}H_2$=CH), 146.87 ($CH_2$=$\underline{C}$H), 154.97 (NH$\underline{C}$$O_2$$Bu^t$) and 174.04 ($\underline{C}O_2CH_3$).

(b) 2S-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,4-dimethyl-hexanoic acid methyl ester **(65)**
Following the general procedure for alkene hydrogenation, compound **(62)** (93mg, 0.3mmol) yielded compound **(65)** as a colourless oil, yield 90mg, 96% and used directly in the subsequent reaction. Electrospray-MS m/z 274 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 22.55mins (100%).

(c) 2S-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,4-dimethyl-hexanoic acid **(66)**
Following the general procedure for methyl ester saponification, compound **(65)** (90mg, 0.3mmol) gave compound **(66)** as crystals, yield 79mg, 92% and used directly in the subsequent reaction. Electrospray-MS m/z 260 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 20.90mins (100%).

(d) 2S-2-Amino-4,4-dimethyl-hexanoic acid trifluoroacetic acid salt **(67)**
Following the general procedure of N-Boc removal using TFA, compound **(66)** (79mg, 0.3mmol) gave compound **(67)** as a solid, yield 80mg, 96% and used directly in the subsequent reaction. Electrospray-MS m/z 274 (MH^+).

(e) 2S-2-(9*H*-Fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,4-dimethyl-hexanoic acid **(68)**

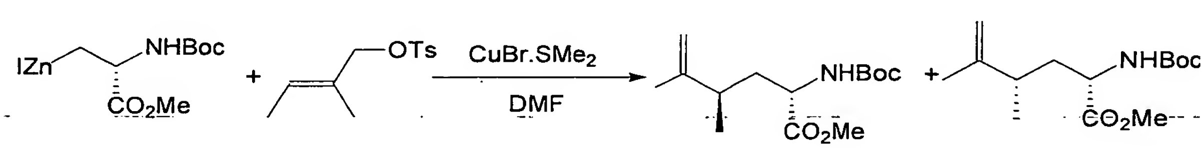
Following the general procedure for Fmoc protection of an amine, compound **(67)** (80mg, 0.3mmol) gave on purification by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with $CHCl_3$ / CH_3OH (100:0 to 96:4, v/v) 2S-2-(9*H*-fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,4-dimethyl-hexanoic acid **(68)** as a solid, yield 60mg, 54%. Electrospray-MS m/z 382(MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 23.63mins (100%); $[\alpha]_D^{17}$ −18.4 (c 0.25 in EtOH)

δ_H (500MHz, $CDCl_3$) 0.88 (3H, t, *J* 7, C$\underline{H}_3$$CH_2$), 0.95 (6H, s, $CH_3CH_2C(C\underline{H}_3)_2$), 1.31 (2H, m, $CH_3C\underline{H}_2$), 1.46 (1H, dd, *J* 14.5, 10, $CH_3CH_2C(CH_3)_2C\underline{H}_{2A}$), 1.85 (1H, br d, *J* 14.5, $CH_3CH_2C(CH_3)_2C\underline{H}_{2B}$), 4.21 (1H, t, *J* 6.5, C$\underline{H}$-Fmoc), 4.41 (3H, m, NHC$\underline{H}$$CO_2H$ and CH_2O), 5.02 (1H, br d, *J* 8, N$\underline{H}$-Fmoc), 7.29 (2H, m, H-2' and H-7'), 7.38 (2H, m, H-3' and H-6'), 7.58 (2H, m, H-1' and H-8') and 7.74 (2H, d, *J* 7, H-4' and H-5').

Example Synthesis 2

Preparation of 2S,4RS-2-(9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid **(74)**

Optically pure 2S,4S-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,5-dimethyl-hex-5-enoic acid methyl ester **(69)** and 2S,4R-2-*tert*-Butoxy-carbonylamino-4,5-dimethyl-hex-5-enoic acid methyl ester **(70)** were obtained directly after zinc coupling reaction by flash chromatography.



(61) (69) (70)

(a) 2S,4S-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,5-dimethyl-hex-5-enoic acid methyl ester **(69)** and 2S,4R-2-*tert*-butoxy-carbonylamino-4,5-dimethyl-hex-5-enoic acid methyl ester **(70)**

Following the general procedure for zinc coupling reactions, toluene-4-sulfonic acid (E)-2-methyl-but-2-enyl ester (1.45mL, 1.0mmol) was coupled to compound **(61)** (247mg, 0.75mmol) in the presence of $CuBr.SMe_2$ (20mg, 0.10mmol) to give a residue

which was purified by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc / 40:60 petroleum ether (1:9, v/v) to give two diastereoisomers. Analytical HPLC Rt = 22.49mins (60%) and Rt = 22.52mins (40%). Fractions of the first eluted component were pooled to give one of the diastereoisomers obtained as a colourless oil, yield 36mg, 18%. Next a mixture of the diastereomers as a colourless oil, yield 75mg, 37% was obtained. Pure fractions containing the later eluted component were pooled to give the other diastereoisomer as a colourless oil, yield 19mg, 9%. (The stereochemistry at the 4 position was not investigated). Spectral data obtained for the fast running diastereomer: Electrospray-MS m/z 272 (MH^+); $[\alpha]_D^{20}$ +12.3 (c 1.06 in $CHCl_3$); IR (cap. film)/cm^{-1} 3382 (s), 3070 (m), 2966 (s), 1746 (s), 1716 (s), 1616 (w), 1507 (s), 886 (m)

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 1.06 (3H, d, *J* 7, $C\underline{H}_3CH$), 1.45 (9H, s, $C(C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 1.58 (1H, m, $CH_3C\underline{H}$), 1.68 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3C{=}CH_2$), 1.85 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}_{2A}CH$), 1.97 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}_{2B}CH$), 3.73 (3H, s, OCH_3), 4.29 (1H, m, $NHC\underline{H}CO_2CH_3$), 4.72 (1H, s, $C\underline{H}_{2A}{=}CH$), 4.95 (1H, d, *J* 1.5, $C\underline{H}_{2B}{=}CH$) and 5.04 (1H, d, *J* 7, NH)
δ_C (125 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 18.61 ($\underline{C}H_3C{=}CH_2$), 21.64 ($\underline{C}H_3CH$), 28.32 ($C(\underline{C}H_3)_3$), 30.79 ($CH_3\underline{C}HCH_2$), 38.06 ($\underline{C}H_2CHNH$), 52.00 ($NH\underline{C}HCO_2CH_3$), 52.22 (OCH_3), 79.53 ($\underline{C}(CH_3)_3$), 110.19 ($\underline{C}H_2{=}C(CH_3)$), 144.62 ($CH_2{=}\underline{C}(CH_3)$), 155.18 (OCONH) and 173.30 ($\underline{C}O_2CH_3$).

Spectral data obtained for the slow running diastereoismer: Electrospray-MS m/z 272 (MH^+); $[\alpha]_D^{20}$ +16.0 (c 0.60 in $CHCl_3$); IR (cap. film)/cm^{-1} 3369 (s), 3073 (m), 2969 (s), 1747 (s), 1717 (s), 1617 (w), 1517 (s), 893 (m)

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 1.04 (3H, d, *J* 7, $C\underline{H}_3CH$), 1.44 (9H, s, $C(C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 1.55 (1H, m, $CH_3C\underline{H}$), 1.67 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3C{=}CH_2$), 1.91 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}_{2A}CH$), 2.37 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}_{2B}CH$), 3.73 (3H, s, OCH_3), 4.26 (1H, m, $NHC\underline{H}CO_2CH_3$), 4.75 (1H, d, *J* 1.5, $C\underline{H}_{2A}{=}CH$), 4.79 (1H, d, *J* 1.5, $C\underline{H}_{2B}{=}CH$) and 5.46 (1H, d, *J* 6.1, NH)
δ_C (125 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 18.51 ($\underline{C}H_3C{=}CH_2$), 20.14 ($\underline{C}H_3CH$), 28.31 ($C(\underline{C}H_3)_3$), 30.55 ($CH_3\underline{C}HCH_2$), 37.64 ($\underline{C}H_2CHNH$), 52.17 ($NH\underline{C}HCO_2CH_3$), 52.22 (OCH_3), 79.74

($\underline{C}(CH_3)_3$), 111.27 ($\underline{C}H_2=C(CH_3)$), 147.94 ($CH_2=\underline{C}(CH_3)$), 155.36 (OCONH) and 173.83 ($\underline{C}O_2CH_3$).

These diastereoisomers were not separated routinely and used as a mixture in subsequent reactions.

(b) 2S,4RS-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid methyl ester **(71)**
Following the general procedure for alkene hydrogenation, compounds **(69)** and compound **(70)** (130mg, 0.48mmol) yielded a mixture of two diastereoisomers **(71)** which were not separated, obtained as a colourless oil, yield 128mg, 98%. Analytical HPLC Rt 22.49mins, electrospray-MS m/z 274 (MH^+).

(c) 2S,4RS-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid **(72)**
Following the general procedure for methyl ester saponification, compounds **(71)** (128mg, 0.47mmol) gave a inseparable mixture of compounds **(72)** as a colourless oil, yield 106mg, 87%. Electrospray-MS m/z 260 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 20.65mins (100%).

(d) 2S,4RS-2-Amino-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid trifluoroacetic acid salt **(73)**
Following the general procedure of N-Boc removal using TFA, compounds **(72)** (106mg, 0.41mmol) gave an inseparable mixture of compounds **(73)** as a solid, yield 107mg, 96% and used directly in the subsequent reaction. Electrospray-MS m/z 160 (MH^+).

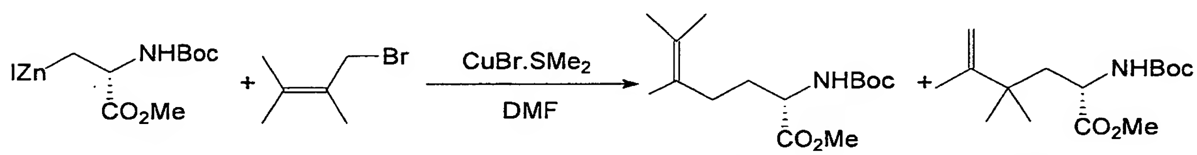
(e) 2S,4RS-2-(9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid **(74)**
Following the general procedure for Fmoc protection of an amine, compounds **(73)** (107mg, 0.39mmol) gave on purification by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with $CHCl_3$ / CH_3OH (100:0 to 95:5, v/v) 2S,4RS-2-(9H-fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid **(74)** as a solid, yield 60mg, 40% as a mixture of two diastereoisomers. Analytical HPLC Rt = 23.83mins (40%)

and Rt = 24.06mins (60%). First eluted diastereomer: Electrospray-MS m/z 382 (MH^+). Later eluted diastereomer: Electrospray-MS m/z 382 (MH^+).

Example Synthesis 3

Preparation of 2S,5RS-2-(9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid **(80)** and 2S-2-(9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,4,5-trimethyl-hexanoic acid **(84)**

(S)-2-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylamino-5,6-dimethyl-hept-5-enoic methyl ester **(75)** and (S)-2-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylamino-4,4,5-trimethyl-hex-5-enoic methyl ester **(76)** were obtained directly after zinc coupling reaction by flash chromatography.



(61) (75) (76)

(a) 2S-2-*tert*-Butyloxycarbonylamino-5,6-dimethyl-hept-5-enoic methyl ester **(75)** and 2S-2-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylamino-4,4,5-trimethyl-hex-5-enoic methyl ester **(76)**

Following the general procedure for zinc coupling reactions, 1-bromo-2,3-dimethylbut-2-ene (163mg, 1.0mmol) was coupled to compound **(61)** (247mg, 0.75mmol) in presence of $CuBr.SMe_2$ (20mg, 0.10mmol) to give a residue which on purification by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with EtOAc/ 40:60 petroleum ether (1:9) gave two regioisomers. The first eluted component compound **(75)** as a colourless oil, yield 60mg, 28% and the second eluted component was compound **(76)** as a colourless oil, yield 51mg, 24%.

Spectral data obtained for compound **(75)**; Electrospray-MS m/z 285 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 22.85mins (100%); HRMS $C_{15}H_{27}NO_4$ requires *M*, 285.1940, found: M^+ 285.1954 (δ – 4.9 ppm); $[\alpha]_D^{22}$ +26.1 (c 1.01 in CH_2Cl_2); elemental analysis

$C_{15}H_{27}NO_4$ (req) %C 63.1, %H 9.5, %N 4.9, (fnd) %C 62.4, %H 9.6, %N 5.3; IR (cap. film)/cm^{-1} 3366 (s), 3154 (m), 2978 (s), 1744 (s), 1718 (s), 1506 (s), 1366 (s), 1164 (s)

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 1.45 (9H, s, $C(C\underline{H}_3)_3$), 1.62 (9H, m, $(C\underline{H}_3)_2$=$C(C\underline{H}_3)$), 1.87 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}_{2A}CH_2CH$), 2.03 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}_{2B}CH_2CH$), 2.09 (1H, dd, *J* 6, 10.5, $CH_2C\underline{H}_{2A}CH$), 2.12 (1H, dd, *J* 6.5, 10.5, $CH_2C\underline{H}_{2B}CH$), 3.74 (3H, s, OCH_3), 4.29 (1H, m, $NHC\underline{H}CO_2CH_3$) and 5.02 (1H, d, *J* 7, NH)
δ_C (125 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 18.19 ($(CH_3)_2C$=$C(\underline{C}H_3)$), 20.00 ($(\underline{C}H_3)_{2cis}C$=$C(CH_3)$), 20.61 ($(\underline{C}H_3)_{2trans}C$=$C(CH_3)$), 28.33 ($C(\underline{C}H_3)_3$), 30.07 ($CH_2\underline{C}H_2CH$), 30.92 ($\underline{C}H_2CH_2CH$), 52.20 ($NH\underline{C}HCO_2CH_3$), 53.47 ($OCH_3$), 80.00 ($\underline{C}(CH_3)_3$), 95.90 ($(CH_3)_2\underline{C}$=$C(CH_3)$), 96.49 ($(CH_3)_2C$=$\underline{C}(CH_3)$, 155.33 (OCONH) and 173.42 (CO_2CH_3).

Spectral data obtained for compound **(76)**; Electrospray-MS m/z 285 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 22.91mins (100%); HRMS $C_{11}H_{19}NO_4$ requires *M* 229.1314, found: M^+-C_4H_8 229.1309 (δ – 2.2 ppm); $[\alpha]_D^{23}$ +4.8 (c 1.01 in CH_2Cl_2); elemental analysis $C_{15}H_{27}NO_4$ (req) %C 63.1, %H 9.5, %N 4.9, (fnd) %C 62.5, %H 9.5, %N; IR (cap. film)/cm^{-1} 3368 (s), 3091 (m), 2934 (s), 1748 (s), 1717 (s), 1516 (s)

δ_H (500 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 1.10 (3H, s, $(CH_3)_{2A}C$), 1.12 (3H, s, $(CH_3)_{2B}C$), 1.43 (9H, s, $C(CH_3)_3$), 1.60 (1H, m, $C\underline{H}_{2A}CH$), 1.74 (3H, s, $C\underline{H}_3C$=CH_2), 1.92 (1H, dd, *J* 14.5, 4, $C\underline{H}_{2B}CH$), 3.70 (3H, s, OCH_3), 4.24 (1H, m, $NHC\underline{H}CO_2CH_3$), 4.79 (1H, s, $C\underline{H}_{2A}$=$C(CH_3)$), 4.82 (1H, s, $C\underline{H}_{2B}$=$C(CH_3)$) and 4.83 (1H, br d, *J* 11, NH)
δ_C (125 MHz, $CDCl_3$) 19.38 (CH_3), 27.19 (CH_3), 27.61 (CH_3), 28.34 ($C(\underline{C}H_3)_3$), 38.50 ($\underline{C}H_2CH$), 38.95 ($(CH_3)_2\underline{C}$), 51.34 ($NH\underline{C}HCO_2CH_3$), 52.13 (OCH_3), 79.71 ($\underline{C}(CH_3)_3$), 110.95 ($\underline{C}H_2$=$C(CH_3)$), 150.62 (CH_2=$\underline{C}(CH_3)$), 155.00 (OCONH) and 174.24 ($\underline{C}O_2CH_3$).

(b) 2S,5RS-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid methyl ester **(77)**
Following the general procedure for alkene hydrogenation, 2S-2-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylamino-5,6-dimethyl-hept-5-enoic methyl ester **(75)** (60mg, 0.21mmol) yielded compound **(77)** as a colourless oil, yield 54mg, 89%. Electrospray-MS m/z 288 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 24.06mins (100%).

(c) 2S,5RS-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid **(78)**

Following the general procedure for methyl ester saponification, compounds **(77)** (54mg, 0.19mmol) gave compounds **(78)** as a colourless oil, yield 54mg, 100%. Electrospray-MS m/z 274 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 21.44mins (100%).

(d) 2S,5RS-2-Amino-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid hydrochloride salt **(79)**

Following the general procedure of N-Boc removal using 4M HCl in dioxane, compounds **(78)** (54mg, 0.20mmol) gave compounds **(79)** as a solid, yield 40mg, 97%. Electrospray-MS m/z 174 (MH^+).

(e) 2S,5RS-2-(9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid **(80)**

Following the general procedure for Fmoc protection of an amine, compounds **(79)** (40mg, 0.19mmol) gave on purification by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with $CHCl_3$ / CH_3OH (100:0 to 95:5, v/v) 2S,5RS-2-(9H-fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid **(80)** as a solid, yield 27mg, 36%. Electrospray-MS m/z 395 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 24.52mins (100%), HRMS $C_{24}H_{29}O_4NNa$ requires *M* 418.1994, found: MNa^+, 418.1993. (δ – 0.38 ppm)

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$) 0.73 (6H, m, ($C\underline{H}_3)_2CH$), 0.82 (3H, d, *J* 6.5, $(CH_3)_2CHCH(C\underline{H}_3)$), 1.23 (1H, m, $(CH_3)_2CHCH(CH_3)C\underline{H}_{2A}$), 1.39 (1H, m, $(CH_3)_2CHCH(CH_3)C\underline{H}_{2B}$), 1.55 (2H, m, $(CH_3)_2CHC\underline{H}(CH_3)$ and $(CH_3)_2CHCH(CH_3)CH_2C\underline{H}_{2A}$), 1.63 (1H, m, $(CH_3)_2C\underline{H}CH(CH_3)$), 1.90 (1H, m, $(CH_3)_2CHCH(CH_3)CH_2C\underline{H}_{2B}$), 4.18 (1H, t, *J* 6.5, C$\underline{H}$-Fmoc), 4.40 (3H, m, $NHC\underline{H}CO_2H$ and CH_2O), 5.30 (1H, br d, *J* 8, N$\underline{H}$-Fmoc), 7.27 (2H, m, H-2' and H-7'), 7.37 (2H, m, H-3' and H-6'), 7.56(2H, m, H-1' and H-8') and 7.75 (2H, d, *J* 7, H-4' and H-5')

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$) 14.91 ($(CH_3)_2CHCH(\underline{C}H_3)$), 17.49 and 17.73 ($(\underline{C}H_3)_{2A}CH$), 19.93 and 20.05 ($(\underline{C}H_3)_{2B}CH$), 28.08 ($(CH_3)_2\underline{C}H$), 29.26 and 29.44 ($(CH_3)_2CHCH(CH_3)CH_2\underline{C}H_2$), 30.04 and 30.17 ($(CH_3)_2CHCH(CH_3)\underline{C}H_2CH_2$), 31.38 and 31.68 ($(CH_3)_2CH\underline{C}H(CH_3)$), 37.89 and 38.07 ($NH\underline{C}HCO_2H$), 46.88 (CH-1'), 66.84 (CH_2O), 119.72 (CH-5' and CH-10'), 124.80 (CH-4' and CH-11'), 126.81 (CH-6' and CH-9'), 127.46 (CH-3' and CH-12'), 141.05 (C-7' and C-8'), 143.47 (C-2' and C-13') and 155.89 (OCONH). The quaternary signal for the carboxylic acid was not observed.

(f) 2S-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,4,5-trimethyl-hexanoic acid methyl ester **(81)**
Following the general procedure for alkene hydrogenation, 2S-2-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylamino-4,4,5-trimethyl-hex-5-enoic methyl ester **(76)** (51mg, 0.18mmol) yielded compound **(81)** as a colourless oil, yield 46mg, 90%. Electrospray-MS m/z 288 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 22.91mins (100%).

(g) 2S-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-4,4,5-trimethyl-hexanoic acid **(82)**
Following the general procedure for methyl ester saponification, compound **(81)** (46mg, 0.16mmol) gave compound **(82)** as a colourless oil, yield 44mg, 100%. Electrospray-MS m/z 274 (MH^+).

(h) 2S-2-Amino-4,4,5-trimethyl-hexanoic acid hydrochloride salt **(83)**
Following the general procedure of N-Boc removal using 4M HCl in dioxane, compound **(82)** (44mg, 0.16mmol) gave compound **(83)** as a solid, yield 33mg, 99%. Electrospray-MS m/z 174 (MH^+).

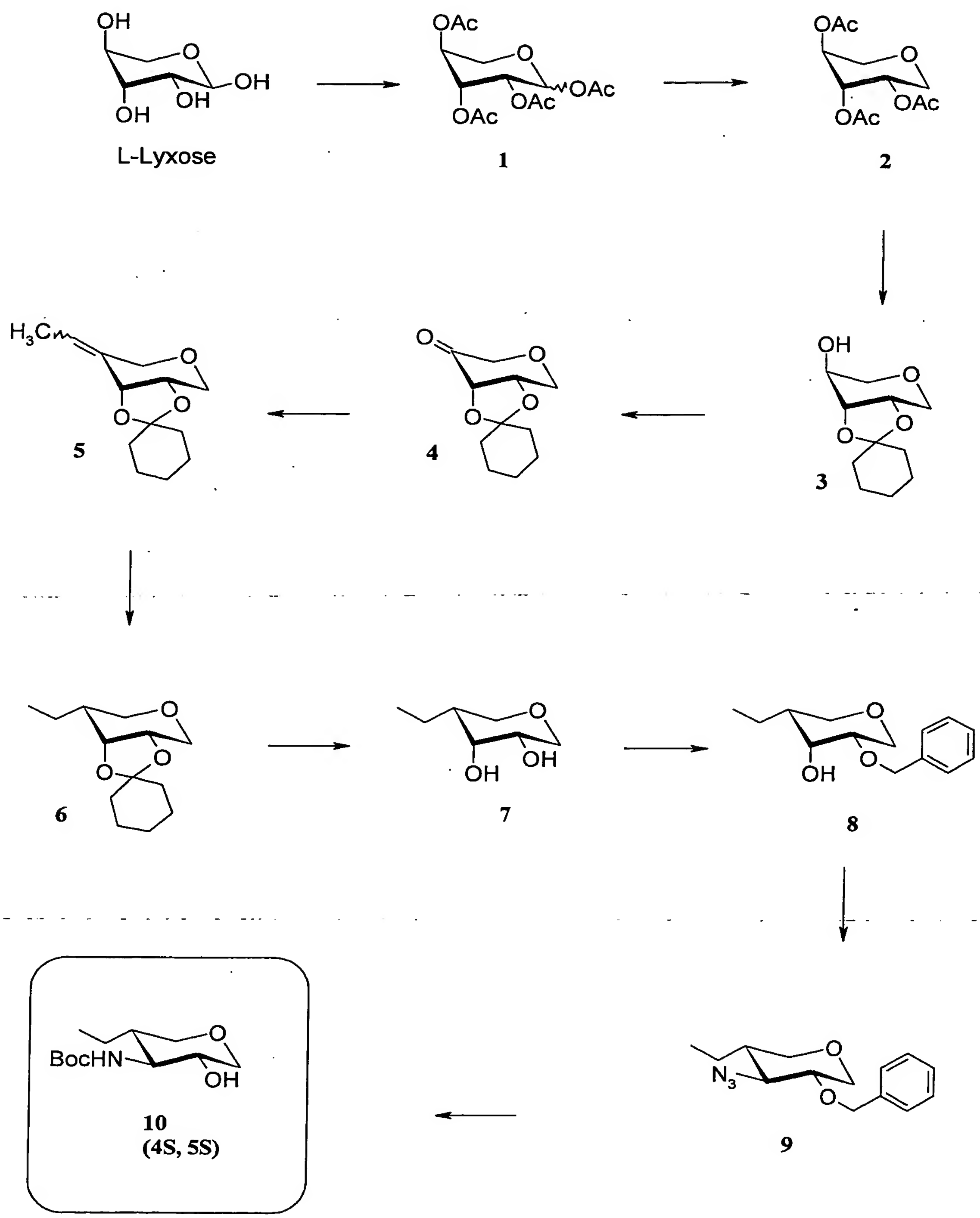
(i) 2S-2-(9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,4,5-trimethyl-hexanoic acid **(84)**
Following the general procedure for Fmoc protection of an amine, compound **(83)** (33mg, 0.16mmol) gave on purification by flash chromatography over silica gel eluting with $CHCl_3$ / CH_3OH (100:0 to 95:5, v/v) 2S-2-(9H-fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonylamino)-4,4,5-trimethyl-hexanoic acid **(84)** as a solid, yield 20mg, 32%. Electrospray-MS m/z 396 (MH^+). Analytical HPLC Rt = 24.28mins (100%), HRMS $C_{24}H_{29}O_4NNa$ requires *M* 418.1994, found: MNa^+, 418.1993. (δ – 0.38 ppm)

δ_H (500 MHz; $CDCl_3$) 0.93 (9H, m, $(C\underline{H}_3)_2CHC(C\underline{H}_3)_{2A}$), 0.98 (3H, s, $(CH_3)_2CHC(C\underline{H}_3)_{2B}$), 1.48 (1H, dd, *J* 14, 10, $(CH_3)_2CHC(CH_3)_2C\underline{H}_{2A}$), 1.57 (1H, m, $(CH_3)_2C\underline{H}$), 1.91 (1H, d, *J* 14, $(CH_3)_2CHC(CH_3)_2C\underline{H}_{2B}$), 4.21 (1H, t, *J* 6.5, C$\underline{H}$-Fmoc), 4.40 (3H, m, $NHC\underline{H}CO_2H$ and CH_2O), 5.10 (1H, br d, *J* 7.5, N$\underline{H}$-Fmoc), 7.27 (2H, m, H-2' and H-7'), 7.36 (2H, m, H-3' and H-6'), 7.57 (2H, m, H-1' and H-8') and 7.74 (2H, d, *J* 7, H-4' and H-5')

δ_C (125 MHz; $CDCl_3$) 17.01 ($(\underline{C}H_3)_{2A}CH$), 17.16 ($(\underline{C}H_3)_{2B}CH$), 23.69 ($(CH_3)_2CHC(\underline{C}H_3)_{2A}$), 24.27 ($(CH_3)_2CHC(\underline{C}H_3)_{2B}$), 35.27 ($(CH_3)_2CH\underline{C}(CH_3)_2$), 35.73 ($(CH_3)_2\underline{C}H$), 41.88 ($(CH_3)_2CHC(CH_3)_2\underline{C}H_2$), 46.93 (CH-1'), 54.20 ($NH\underline{C}HCO_2H$), 66.79 (CH_2O), 119.70 (CH-5' and CH-10'), 124.78 (CH-4' and CH-11'), 126.79 (CH-6' and CH-9'), 127.44 (CH-3' and CH-12'), 141.05 (C-7' and C-8'), 143.61 (C-2' and C-13') and 155.68 (OCONH). The quaternary signal for the carboxylic acid was not observed.

Building blocks for compounds of the formula IV were prepared according to scheme 17 below:

4S, 5S



1,2,3,4-Tetra-*O*-acetyl-L-lyxopyroanose (1).

L-Lyxopyroanose (25.0 g, 166 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (150 ml) and cooled on an icebath, acetic anhydride (75 ml) was added and the solution was stirred at room temperature. After 2 hours tlc (pentane:ethyl acetate 1:1) indicated complete conversion of the starting material into a higher migrating spot. The solution was concentrated and co-evaporated three times with toluene which gave a pale yellow syrup.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^{1}H, δ 2.06 (s, 3H), 2.08 (s, 3H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 2.16 (s, 3H), 3.71 (dd, 1H), 4.01 (dd, J=5.0, 11.7 Hz, 1H), 5.17-5.26 (m, 2H), 5.37 (dd, J=3.5, 8.8 Hz, 1H), 6.0 (d, J=3.2 Hz, 1H).

^{13}C, δ 20.9, 20.9, 21.0, 21.0, 62.2, 66.7, 68.4, 68.4, 90.8, 168.8, 169.9, 170.0, 170.1.

2,3,4-Tri-*O*-acetyl-1,5-anhydro-L-arabinitol (2).

Trimethylsilyl trifluormethanesulphonate (60 ml, 333 mmol) was added to a solution of crude 1,2,3,4-tetra-*O*-acetyl-L-lyxopyroanose in acetonitrile (200 ml), the solution was cooled on an ice bath and triethylsilane (80 ml, 500 mmol) was added dropwise. The solution was stirred at room temperature and the reaction was monitored by GC. When the reaction was completed (after 3 hours) the solution was neutralised with sodium hydrogen carbonate (s), diluted with dichloromethane and washed with water. The organic phase was dried with magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated. The obtained oil was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography (pentane:ethyl acetate 5:1, 4:1, 3:1) which gave 32 g, 74 % (from free lyxose) of the reduced compound.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^{1}H, δ 2.06 (s, 3H), 2.07 (s, 3H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 3.36-3.41 (m, 1H), 3.64 (dd, J=2.4, 12.2 Hz, 1H), 3.87 (m, 1H), 4.03 (m, 1H), 5.10-5.15 (m, 2H), 5.28-5.31 (m, 1H).

1,5-anhydro-3,4-*O*-cyclohexylidene-L-arabinitol (3).

A solution of 1-deoxy-2,3,4-tri-*O*-acetyl-L-lyxopyroanose (20.8 g, 80 mmol) in methanol (125 ml) was treated with a catalytic amount of 1M methanolic sodium methoxide. After stirring for 1 hour at room temperature tlc (ethyl acetate:methanol 3:1) indicated complete conversion into a lower migrating spot. The solution was neutralised with Dowex H^+, filtered and concentrated, which gave a colourless oil.

The oil was suspended in dichloromethane (70 ml) and cyclohexanone diethyl ketal (41 g, 240 mmol) was added followed by *p*.toluenesulphonic acid until acidic pH. After a few minutes the suspension became a clear solution that was stirred at room temperature. After 18 hours, when tlc (pentane:ethyl acetate 1:2) indicated complete conversion into a higher migrating spot, the solution was neutralised with triethyl amine, concentrated and the residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography (toluene:ethyl acetate 3:2, 1:1) which gave 9.6 g, 56% of the title compound as white crystals.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^1H, δ 1.38-1.43 (m, 2H), 1.56-1.75 (m, 8H), 2.43 (d, J=4.9 Hz, 1H), 3.28 (m, 1H), 3.75 (dd, J=3.9, 12.7 Hz, 1H), 3.82-3.94 (m, 3H), 4.05 (t, J=5.4 Hz, 1H), 4.22 (m, 1H).

^{13}C, δ 23.9, 24.3, 25.2, 35.7, 38.3, 67.8, 68.7, 69.1, 71.9, 77.5, 110.5.

1,5-anhydro-3,4-*O*-cyclohexylidene-L-ribulose (4).

A solution of dimethyl sulphoxide (2.65 ml, 37.3 mmol) in dichloromethane (30 ml) was added dropwise at -60 °C under nitrogen to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (1.79 ml, 20.5 mmol) in dichloromethane (30 ml) during a period of 15 min. To this solution a solution of 2,3-*O*-cyclohexylidene-1-deoxy-L-lyxopyroanose (4 g, 18.7 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 ml) was added dropwise during a period of 5 min. A white suspension was obtained and additional dichloromethane was added twice (10+30 ml). The temperature was allowed to rise to -25 °C where the suspension became a colourless solution. The temperature was again lowered to -45 °C and a solution of triethyl amine (12.9 ml, 93.3 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 ml) was added. After 10 min, when tlc (toluene:ethyl acetate 1:1) indicated complete conversion of the alcohol into the ketone, the reaction mixture was poured into water (100 ml), the water layer was extracted once with dichloromethane (50 ml), the combined organic phases were dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated. Flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent pentane:diethyl ether 1:1) of the residue gave a colourless solid. 3.4 g, 86%.

The oxidation was also performed by the **Dess-Martin** procedure:

A suspension of 2,3-*O*-cyclohexylidene-1-deoxy-L-lyxopyroanose (0.5 g, 2.33 mmol) and Dess-Martin periodinane (1.39 g, 3.29 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 ml) was stirred for 10 min then "wet dichloromethane" (46 µl water in 10 ml dichloromethane) was added dropwise during 15 min. After 1h tlc (toluene:ethyl acetate 1:1) indicated complete conversion of the starting material into a higher migrating spot. The reaction mixture was diluted with diethyl ether (100 ml) and washed with an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate/sodium thiosulphate 1:1 (50 ml), dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated. Purification of the residue by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent pentane:diethyl ether 1:1) gave the title compound, 0.42 g, 84%, as a crystalline solid.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^1H, δ 1.39-1.43 (m, 2H), 1.56-1.72 (m, 8H), 3.92-4.07 (m, 3H), 4.18-4.23 (m, 1H), 4.45 (d, J=6.8 Hz, 1H), 4.64-4.67 (m, 1H).

^{13}C, δ 23.9, 24.1, 25.1, 35.3, 36.8, 68.5, 74.1, 75.1, 76.3, 112.4, 205.0.

1,5-anhydro-4-deoxy-4-ethylidene-2,3-*O*-cyclohexylidene-D-*erythro*-pentitol (5).

Potassium-*t*-buthoxide (3.41 g, 30.4 mmol) was added in one portion to a stirred suspension of ethyltriphenylphosphonium bromide (11.9 g, 32.0 mmol) in THF (60 ml) at -10 °C under nitrogen. The obtained orange-red mixture was allowed to reach room temperature, then cooled again to -10 °C and a solution of 1,5-anhydro-3,4-*O*-cyclohexylidene-L-ribulose (3.4 g, 16.0 mmol) in THF (40 ml) was added dropwise. The mixture was allowed to attain room temperature. 20 minutes after final addition, when tlc (toluene:ethyl acetate 1:1) indicated complete conversion of the starting material into a higher migrating spot, the reaction mixture was partitioned between diethyl ether (400 ml) and water (200 ml). The organic layer was washed with water (1x200 ml) and brine (1x200 ml), dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated into a 10-ml residue. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent pentane:ethyl acetate 95:5, 9:1) and appropriate fractions were carefully concentrated (bath temperature 25 °C) into a 10 g solution that was used directly in the next step.

1,5-anhydro-4-deoxy-4-ethyl-2,3-*O*-cyclohexylidene-D-ribitol (6).

The above solution was diluted with ethyl acetate (30 ml), Pd/C (10%, 0.2 g) was added and the mixture was hydrogenated using a balloon with hydrogen. Additional Pd/C was added (0.16 g + 0.20 g) after 40 and 90 minutes. After 100 minutes tlc indicated almost complete consumption of the starting material. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, concentrated into a liquid (5 ml) and purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent pentane:ethyl acetate 95:5, 9:1). Appropriate fractions were concentrated to 2.08 g and this solution was used directly in the next step.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^1H, δ 0.98 (t, 3H), 1.31-1.74 (m, 12H), 1.82-1.92 (m, 1H), 3.18-3.26 (m, 2H), 3.64-3.68 (m, 1H), 3.84 (dd, J=6.4, 11.4 Hz, 1H), 4.08-4.14 (m, 1H), 4.27-4.29 (m, 1H).

^{13}C, δ 11.3, 20.9, 24.0, 24.3, 25.3, 35.7, 38.3, 38.7, 67.7, 68.3, 70.8, 72.6, 109.5.

1,5-anhydro-4-deoxy-4-ethyl-D-ribitol (7).

The above 1,5-anhydro-4-deoxy-4-ethyl-2,3-*O*-cyclohexylidene-D-ribitol was dissolved in aqueous acetic acid (80 %, 25 ml) and the solution was stirred at 70 °C. After 18 hours, when tlc (pentane ethyl acetate 9:1 and 1:1) indicated almost complete consumption of the starting material (~5% left), the solution was concentrated. Purification of the residue by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent pentane:ethyl acetate 1:1, 2:3) gave 0.91 g 39 % (from the keto compound) of a colourless solid.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^1H, δ 0.94 (t, 3H), 1.24-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.58-1.67 (m, 1H), 3.35 (t, 1H), 3.43 (t, 1H), 3.56 (dd, 1H), 3.67-3.71 (m, 2H).

^{13}C, δ 11.4, 20.1, 42.1, 66.1, 66.3, 68.3, 68.7.

1,5-anhydro-2-*O*-benzyl-4-deoxy-4-ethyl-D-ribitol (8).

Sodium hydride (60%, 0.27 g, 6.84 mmol) was added in one portion, at room temperature, under nitrogen, to a stirred solution of 1,5-anhydro-4-deoxy-4-ethyl-D-ribitol (0.5 g, 3.42 mmol) in dimethylformamide (7 ml). After 30 minutes benzyl bromide (0.53 ml, 4.45 mmol) was added dropwise during 30 minutes. After 20 minutes, when tlc (p.ether:ethyl acetate 4:1) indicated complete conversion of the diol, methanol (1 ml) was added and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes. The reaction

mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 ml), washed with water (3x50 ml), dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated. Purification of residue by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent pentane:ethyl acetate 9:1, 4:1) gave 0.52 g, 64% of a colourless solid.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^{1}H, δ 0.94 (t, 3H), 1.25-1.36 (m, 1H), 1.37-1.48 (m, 1H), 1.54-1.62 (m, 1H), 2.14 (s, 1H), 3.40 (t, 1H), 3.51-3.56 (m, 3H), 3.72-3.79 (m, 1H), 4.13 (s, 1H), 4.58 (d, J=11.7 Hz, 1H), 4.63 (d, J=11.7 Hz, 1H), 7.29-7.38 (m, 5H).

^{13}C, δ 11.5, 20.1, 42.0, 64.1, 66.5, 66.6, 71.1, 75.6, 127.9, 128.2, 128.8, 138.1.

1,5-anhydro-3-azido-2-*O*-benzyl-3,4-dideoxy-4-ethyl-D-xylitol (9).

Methanesulphonyl chloride (0.34 g, 2.96 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of 1,5-anhydro-2-*O*-benzyl-4-deoxy-4-ethyl-D-ribitol (0.28 g, 1.18 mmol) in pyridine (5 ml). The reaction mixture was warmed to 50 °C and stirred for one hour. Dichloromethane (100 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was washed successively with 1M aqueous sulphuric acid (2x50 ml), 1M aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in dimethylformamide (10 ml) and sodium azide (0.31 g, 4.74 mmol) was added. The obtained mixture was stirred at 80 °C over night, diluted with ethyl acetate (100 ml), washed with water (3x50 ml), dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated. Purification of residue by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent toluene:ethyl acetate 95:5) gave 0.25 g, 81% of a colourless oil.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^{1}H, δ 0,90 (t, 3H), 1.12-1.24 (m, 1H), 1.44-1.54 (m, 1H), 1.69-1.79 (m, 1H), 3.01 (t, 1H), 3.08-3.16 (m, 2H), 3.44-3.50 (m, 1H), 3.92 (dd, J=4.9, 11.7 Hz, 1H), 4.04 (ddd, J=1.0, 4.9, 11.2 Hz, 1H), 4.62 (d, J= 11.7 Hz, 1H), 4.71 (d, J=11.2 Hz, 1H) 7.29-7.37 (m, 5H).

^{13}C, δ 11.3, 22.0, 42.4, 68.5, 69.2, 70.9, 73.1, 78.2, 128.2, 128.2, 128.7, 138.0.

1,5-anhydro-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,4-dideoxy-4-ethyl-D-xylitol (10).

Pd/C (10%, 30 mg) was added to solution of 1,5-anhydro-3-azido-2-*O*-benzyl-3,4-dideoxy-4-ethyl-D-xylitol (88 mg, 0.34 mmol) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (77 mg, 0.35 mmol) in ethyl acetate (4 ml) and the mixture was stirred under hydrogen. After 18 hours, when tlc (pentane: ethyl acetate 9:1, ninhydride) indicated complete

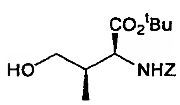
consumption of the starting material, the mixture was filtered through celite and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent toluene:ethyl acetate 4:1) which gave a colourless solid that still contained a benzyl group according to ^{1}H-nmr. The solid was dissolved in ethyl acetate:ethanol 1:1 and hydrogenated over Pd/C (10% 20 mg). After 1 hour, when tlc (toluene ethyl acetate 1:1, ninhydride) indicated complete conversion of the starting material into a lower migrating spot, the mixture was filtered through celite and concentrated. Purification of residue by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluent toluene:ethyl acetate 1:1, 2:3) gave 59 mg, 71% of the desired monool as a colourless solid.

NMR data ($CDCl_3$): ^{1}H, δ 0.90 (t, 3H), 1.12-1.24 (m, 1H), 1.42-1.52 (m, 10H), 1.59-1.70 (m, 1H), 3.05-3.16 (m, 2H), 3.26-3.30 (m, 1H), 3.43-3.48 (m, 2H), 3.96-4.05 (m, 2H).

^{13}C, δ 11.5, 21.2, 28.5, 42.4, 59.2, 71.4, 71.8, 72.7.

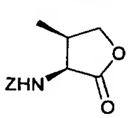
Alternative method for the preparation of 5-methyl pyranones as building blocks and intermediates towards 5-functionalised pyrannes

2-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-butyric acid tert-butyl ester



2-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-butyric acid *tert*-butyl ester was prepared following procedures reported by J.E. Baldwin *et al* (*Tetrahedron* 1995, 51(42), 11581).

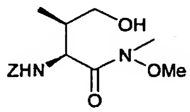
(4-Methyl-2-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid benzyl ester



2-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-butyric acid *tert*-butyl ester (1.00g, 3 mmol) was dissolved in TFA (30 mL). This solution was stirred for 45 minutes and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The residual TFA was removed azeotropically with

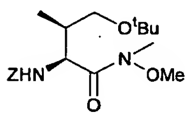
toluene. This residue was purified by flash column chromatography to yield the title compound as a crystalline solid (750mg, 80%), MS (ES^+) 250 (M+H).

[3-Hydroxy-1-(methoxy-methyl-carbamoyl)-2-methyl-propyl]-carbamic acid benzyl ester 4



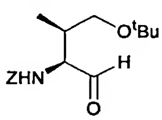
The lactone ring of (4-methyl-2-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid benzyl ester can be opened using *N,O*-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of Me_3Al to give the title compound.

[3-*tert*-Butoxy-1-(methoxy-methyl-carbamoyl)-2-methyl-propyl]-carbamic acid benzyl ester 5



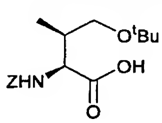
The primary alcohol of [3-hydroxy-1-(methoxy-methyl-carbamoyl)-2-methyl-propyl]-carbamic acid benzyl ester can be protected using tert-butyl-2,2,2-trichloroacetimidate and boron trifluoride etherate to give the title compound.

(3-*tert*-Butoxy-1-formyl-2-methyl-propyl)-carbamic acid benzyl ester 6



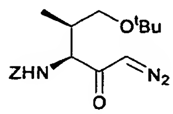
The Weinreb amide function of [3-*tert*-butoxy-1-(methoxy-methyl-carbamoyl)-2-methyl-propyl]-carbamic acid benzyl ester can be reduced using lithium aluminium hydride in ether to provide the title compound.

2-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-4-tert-butoxy-3-methyl-butyric acid 7



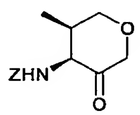
(3-*tert*-butoxy-1-formyl-2-methyl-propyl)-carbamic acid benzyl ester in *tert*-butyl alcohol in the presence of 2-methyl-2-butene can be oxidised using a solution of sodium chlorite and monobasic sodium phosphate in water to give the title compound.

[3-*tert*-Butoxy-1-(2-diazo-acetyl)-2-methyl-propyl]-carbamic acid benzyl ester 9



Activation of 2-benzyloxycarbonylamino-4-*tert*-butoxy-3-methyl-butyric acid with isobutyl chloroformate and 4-methylmorpholine, and subsequent treatment of the activated acid with diazomethane allows for the preparation of the title compound.

(3-Methyl-5-oxo-tetrahydro-pyran-4-yl)-carbamic acid benzyl ester 10



Cyclisation of *tert*-butoxy-1-(2-diazo-acetyl)-2-methyl-propyl]-carbamic acid benzyl ester using lithium chloride in aqueous acetic acid gives the title compound. The CBz protecting group is readily replaced with Boc or Fmoc etc by conventional protecting group manipulation, in preparation for N-terminal extension and capping as described herein. Optionally, the 5-methyl substituent is functionalised as described in schemses 8A and 8B.

General Solid Phase procedures

Molecules were assembled using the furanone building blocks and novel protected aminoacids described earlier, by solid phase procedures on Chiron multipins following the protocols detailed below.

Preparation of Crown Assembly

The compounds were synthesised in parallel fashion using the appropriately loaded Fmoc-Building block-linker-DA/MDA derivatised macrocrowns (see above) loaded at approximately 3.5 – 9.1 μmoles per crown. Prior to synthesis each crown was connected to its respective stem and slotted into the 8 x 12 stem holder. Coupling of the amino acids employed standard Fmoc amino acid chemistry as described in `Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis', E. Atherton and R.C. Sheppard, IRL Press Ltd, Oxford, UK, 1989.

Removal of Nα-Fmoc Protection

A 250 mL solvent resistant bath is charged with 200 mL of a 20% piperidine/DMF solution. The multipin assembly is added and deprotection allowed to proceed for 30 minutes. The assembly is then removed and excess solvent removed by brief shaking. The assembly is then washed consecutively with (200 mL each), DMF (5 minutes) and MeOH (5 minutes, 2 minutes, 2 minutes) and left to air dry for 15 minutes.

Quantitative UV Measurement of Fmoc Chromophore Release

A 1cm path length UV cell is charged with 1.2 mL of a 20% piperidine/DMF solution and used to zero the absorbance of the UV spectrometer at a wavelength of 290nm. A UV standard is then prepared consisting of 5.0 mg Fmoc-Asp(OBut)-Pepsyn KA (0.08 mmol/g) in 3.2 mL of a 20% piperidine/DMF solution. This standard gives Abs_{290} = 0.55-0.65 (at room temperature). An aliquot of the multipin deprotection solution is then diluted as appropriate to give a theoretical Abs_{290} = 0.6, and this value compared with the actual experimentally measured absorbance showing the efficiency of previous coupling reaction.

Standard Coupling Of Amino Acid Residues

Coupling reactions are performed by charging the appropriate wells of a polypropylene 96 well plate with the pattern of activated solutions required during a particular round of coupling. Macrocrown standard couplings were performed in DMF (500 μl).

Coupling of an Amino-acid Residue To Appropriate Well

Whilst the multipin assembly is drying, the appropriate N_α-Fmoc amino acid pfp esters (10 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown) and HOBt (10 equivalents) required for the particular round of coupling are accurately weighed into suitable containers. Alternatively, the appropriate N_α-Fmoc amino acids (10 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown), desired coupling agent e.g. HBTU (9.9 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown) and activation e.g. HOBt (9.9 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown), NMM (19.9 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown) are accurately weighed into suitable containers.

The protected and activated Fmoc amino acid derivatives are then dissolved in DMF (500 μl for each macrocrown e.g. for 20 macrocrowns, 20 x 10 eq. x 7 μmoles of derivative would be dissolved in 10 mL DMF). The appropriate derivatives are then dispensed to the appropriate wells ready for commencement of the 'coupling cycle'. As a standard, coupling reactions are allowed to proceed for 6 hours. The coupled assembly was then washed as detailed below.

Washing Following Coupling

If a 20% piperidine/DMF deprotection is to immediately follow the coupling cycle, then the multipin assembly is briefly shaken to remove excess solvent washed consecutively with (200 mL each), MeOH (5 minutes) and DMF (5 minutes) and de-protected. If the multipin assembly is to be stored or reacted further, then a full washing cycle consisting brief shaking then consecutive washes with (200 mL each), DMF (5 minutes) and MeOH (5 minutes, 2 minutes, 2 minutes) is performed.

Addition of Capping Group

Whilst the multipin assembly is drying, the appropriate acid capping group (10 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown), desired coupling agent e.g. HBTU (9.9 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown) and activation e.g. HOBt (9.9 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown), NMM (19.9 equivalents calculated from the loading of each crown) are accurately weighed into suitable containers. The acid derivatives / coupling agents are then dissolved in DMF (500 μl for each macrocrown e.g. for 20 macrocrowns, 20 x 10 eq. of derivative would be dissolved in 10 mL DMF) and left to activate for 5 minutes. The appropriate derivatives are then dispensed to the appropriate wells ready for commencement of the 'capping cycle'. As a standard, capping reactions are allowed to proceed for 18 hours overnight. The capped assembly was then washed as detailed above.

Acidolytic Mediated Cleavage of Molecule-Pin Assembly

Acid mediated cleavage protocols are strictly performed in a fume hood. A polystyrene 96 well plate (1 mL/well) is labelled and weighed to the nearest mg. Appropriate wells

are then charged with a trifluoroacetic acid/water (95:5, v/v, 600 μl) cleavage solution, in a pattern corresponding to that of the multipin assembly to be cleaved.

The multipin assembly is added, the entire construct covered in tin foil and left for 2 hours. The multipin assembly in then added to another polystyrene 96 well plate (1 mL/well) containing trifluoroacetic acid/water (95:5, v/v, 600 μl) (as above) for 5 minutes.

Work up of Cleaved Molecules

The primary polystyrene cleavage plate (2 hour cleavage) and the secondary polystyrene plate (5 minute wash) are then placed in the GeneVac evaporator and the solvents removed (minimum drying rate) for 90 minutes. The contents of the secondary polystyrene plate are transferred to their corresponding wells on the primary plate using an acetonitrile/water (50: 50 v/v/v) solution (3 x 150 μl) and the spent secondary plate discarded. Aliqouts (5-20μL) are taken for analysis. The plate was covered in tin foil, pin-pricked over wells containing compounds, placed into the freezer for 1hr, then lyophilised.

Analysis and Purification of Molecules

The (5-20μL) aliquots are analysed by analytical HPLC and electrospray-MS. In virtually all cases, crude purities are >90% by HPLC with the desired m/z. Sample were purified by semi-preparative reverse phase HPLC, using Vydac C_4.Appropriate fractions are combined and lyophilised in tared 10mL glass vials, then re-weighed. Molecules were prepared on a 15-90μmole scale, yielding 2.0-26.0mg of purified products. The purity of each product was confirmed by analytical HPLC at >95% (215nm UV detection) and gave the appropriate $[MH]^+$ by electrospray mass spectrometry analysis.

Loading of Macrocrowns With Constructs

General method for the loading of multipins with Dihydro-3(2H)-Furanone – Linker Constructs **(29-34)**

Amino functionalised DA/MDA macrocrowns (ex Chiron Mimotopes, Australia, 9.1μmole loading) or amino functionalised HEMA gears (ex Chiron Mimotopes,

Australia, 1.3μmole loading) were used for all loadings and subsequent solid phase syntheses.

Dihydro-3(2H)-Furanone – Linker Construct **(29-34)** (3eq compared to total surface functionalisation of crowns / gears) was carboxyl activated with 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate (3eq), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (3eq) and N-methylmorpholine (6eq) in dimethylformamide (5mL) for 5mins. This mixture was added to the crowns / gears, additional DMF added to cover the reaction surface and the mixture left overnight.

Standard washing and Fmoc deprotection readings (see procedures above) indicated virtually quantitative loading.

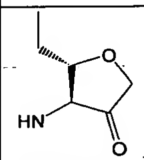
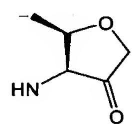
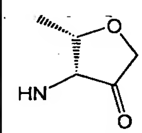
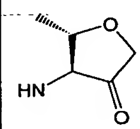
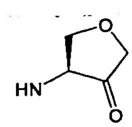
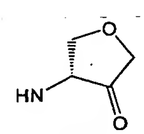
Exemplar molecules prepared by the methods detailed above are shown in Table 1A below. Table 1B and 2 depict further compounds, together with a Ki (μM) measurement of inhibition verses mammalian, murine and rat cathepsins S and mammalian L and K.

Table 1A:

Electrospray-MS m/z (MH^+)	Compound
374	4-Dimethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3S-enyl]-benzamide
404	4-Diethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide
402	4-Diethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide
362	4-Methylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide
360	4-Methylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide
348	4-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide
346	4-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide

348	2-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide
346	2-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide
390	*N*-[3-Methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-4-propylamino-benzamide
388	*N*-[3-Methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-4-propylamino-benzamide
374	*N*-[2-Cyclopropyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-4-dimethylamino-benzamide

The moieties shown in the following Tables 1B and 2 use the terms “CAP”, “P1” and “P2” which can be cross referenced to the generic formula (II) as follows: R1=CAP; R2=H; R3=P2; R4=H, R5=P1; and R6=H.

			P1			
CAP-P2	 (4S, 5S)	 (4S, 5R)	 (4R, 5S)	 (4S, 5S)	 (4S)	 (4R)
CAP1-L-Leu		0.49 0.48 0.083	0.23 2.7 0.41	0.17 2.04 0.32	0.23 0.24 0.07	0.27 0.39 0.07
CAP3-L-Leu		0.43 0.31 0.43			0.36 0.15 0.21	
CAP5-L-Leu		0.48 1.48 0.29				
CAP6-L-Leu		0.51 0.12 0.44	0.61 1.10 0.75	0.68 0.67 2.75	0.55 0.14 0.44	0.48 0.19 0.33
CAP7-L-Leu		2.8	4.2	3.7	3.1	3.9

		0.69 0.015	6.8 0.17	4.9 0.15	0.69 0.018	1.1 0.023
CAP8-L-Leu			0.39 28.4 3.7			
CAP9-L-Leu			0.80 7.9 4.8			
CAP10-L-Leu		1.3 0.71 3.0				
CAP1-L-Nle			0.57 21.1 13.4	0.40 19.3 8.9	0.56 3.3 1.4	0.49 4.4 1.15
CAP3-L-Nle					0.76 2.8 5.8	
CAP7-L-Nle		4.1 10.5 0.24	6.8 46.7 3.1	6.2 49.9 1.3	5.4 10.2 0.26	5.7 15.2 0.13
CAP8-L-Nle		1.5 54.4 13.2	1.0 >100 >100	2.3 >100 >100		
CAP1-L-Tyr			1.0 1.8 >100	0.77 1.4 >100	0.86 0.33 27.1	0.72 0.35 >100
CAP2-L-Tyr		3.2 0.22 >100				
CAP3-L-Tyr		1.1 0.17 >100	0.17 1.4 >100	1.3 1.0 >100	1.6 0.25 >100	1.8 0.36 >100

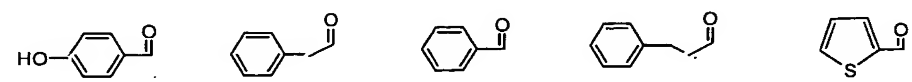
CAP5-L-Tyr		1.6 0.5 >100				
CAP6-L-Tyr		2.0 0.055 >100	0.24 0.67 >100	2.7 0.25 >100	1.5 0.14 >100	2.3 0.14 >100
CAP7-L-Tyr		7.4 0.24 2.8				
CAP8-L-Tyr			1.2 9.5 >100			
CAP10-L-Tyr		4.8 0.06 >100	0.34 0.46 >100	4.1 0.45 >100	3.7 0.1 >100	3.7 0.1 >100
CAP1-L-hLeu		0.68 15.1 3.1	0.3 29.8 24.1			
CAP3-L-hLeu					0.8 5.1 6.6	
CAP4-L-hLeu		3.2 55.8 13.0				
CAP8-L-hLeu		0.97 38.9 16.0	0.45 >100 >100	0.37 >100 >100	0.66 49.7 16.3	0.44 61.2 8.7
CAP9-L-hLeu		0.78 48.7 34.3	0.7 >100 >100	0.52 >100 >100	0.25 71.5 21.6	0.46 58.2 16.4
CAP1-L-tBu-Ala		0.25 3.9				

		0.39				
CAP3-L-tBu-Ala		0.42 6.6 0.85				
CAP4-L-tBu-Ala		0.94 87.1 5.7				
CAP5-L-tBu-Ala		0.47 24.6 0.65				
CAP7-L-tBu-Ala		2.7 13.1 0.04				
CAP8-L-tBu-Ala		0.18 39.0 1.3	0.2 >100 19.9	0.1 >100 7.3	0.21 36.4 0.85	0.24 68.1 0.91
CAP9-L-tBu-Ala		0.58 30.4 4.2				
CAP11-L-tBu-Ala	0.031 14.5 0.325			0.095 55.2 1.55		
CAP8-Hybrid1	0.06 >100 2.97			0.21 >100 30.2		
CAP11-Hybrid1	0.057 54.6 1.04			0.20 79.6 5.95		
CAP8-Hybrid3	0.015 >100 5.5			0.236 65.6 >100		
CAP11-	0.021			0.256		

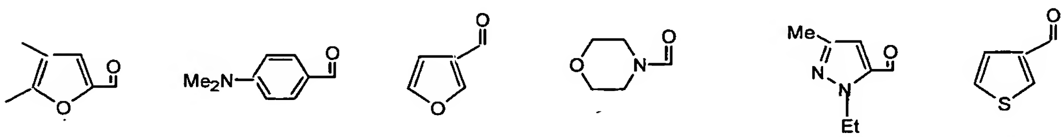
Hybrid3	90.8 1.94			99.4 10.0		

Table 1. Ki competitive inhibition measurements (μM) vs Mammalian Cathepsin S
L
K

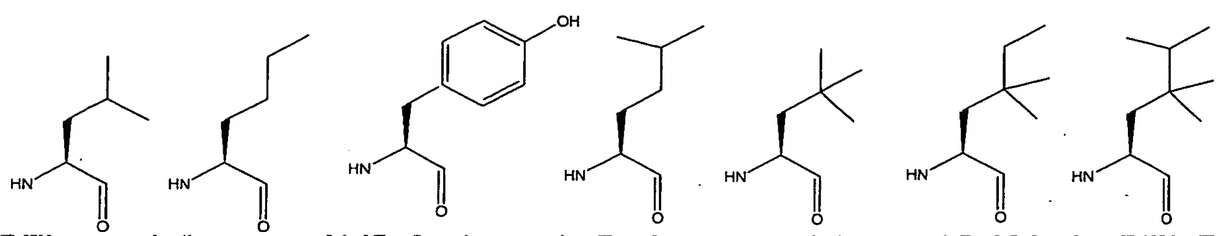
CAP



1 2 3 4 5

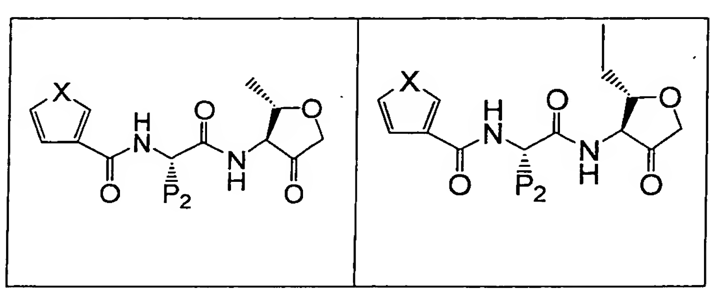


6 7 8 9 10 11



Leu **Nle** **Tyr** **hLeu** **tBu-Ala** **Hybrid 1** **Hybrid 3**

P2 Aminoacid Residues



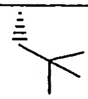
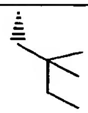
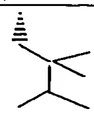
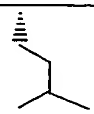
P_2	Ki (µM)	X = O	X = S	X = O	X = S
	Human	0.13	0.095	0.053	0.031
	Mouse	0.10	0.048	0.039	0.024
	Rat	0.211	0.084	0.058	0.048
	Human	0.21	0.20	0.06	0.057
	Mouse	0.263			
	Rat	0.518			
	Human	0.236	0.256	0.015	0.021
	Mouse	0.294		0.149	0.091
	Rat	0.58		0.271	0.657
	Human	0.540	0.28	-	-
	Mouse	0.895			
	Rat	2.31			

Table 2. Ki competitive inhibition measurements (µM) vs
Mammalian Cathepsin S
Murine Cathepsin S
Rat Cathepsin S

<u>K_i determinations for cathepsins S, L, and K</u>

Cathepsin S (Mammalian, murine and rat)

General

Assays were performed in 100 mM sodium phosphate, 100 mM NaCl, pH 6.5 (buffer) in white 384 well plates (Corning Costar). Eight inhibitors were assayed per plate.

Inhibitor dilutions

Inhibitor dilutions were performed on a 96 well V-bottomed polypropylene plate (Corning Costar). 100 µl of buffer was placed in wells 2-5 and 7-12 of rows A, B, C and D. Sufficient of each inhibitor at 10 mM in DMSO was placed into wells A1-D1 and A6-D6 to give the desired final concentration when the volume in the well was

made up to 200 μl with buffer. Column 1 was made up to 200 μl with buffer, mixed by aspirating and dispensing 100 μl in the well, and 100 μl transferred to column 2. The pipette tips were changed and the mixing and transferral repeated to column 5. This process was repeated for columns 6-10.

Substrate dilutions

Substrate dilutions were performed on a 96 deep well polypropylene plate (Beckman Coulter). 280 μl of buffer was placed in wells B-H of columns 1 and 2. 70 μl of 10 mM boc-Val-Leu-Lys-AMC was placed in A1 and A2. 2 × 250 μl of buffer was added to wells A1 and A2, mixed by aspirating and dispensing 280 μl in the well, and 280 μl transferred to row B. The pipette tips were changed and the process repeated down the plate to row H.

Assay

Column 1 of the substrate dilution plate was distributed at 10 μl per well into alternate rows beginning at row A. Column 2 was distributed to alternate rows beginning at row B. Row A of the inhibitor dilution plate was distributed at 10 μl per well to alternate rows and columns starting at A1. Row B was distributed to alternate rows and columns starting at A2. Row C was distributed to alternate rows and columns starting at B1 and row D was distributed to alternate rows and columns starting at B2. The assay was started by the addition of 30 μl per well of 20 nM cathepsin S in buffer containing 10 mM 2-mercaptoethanol.

Data were saved as text files and imported into Excel. The initial rates were determined by linear regression and then fitted to the competitive inhibition equation using SigmaPlot.

Cathepsins L and K

Assays were performed essentially as above. For cathepsin L, the buffer used was 100 mM sodium acetate, 1 mM EDTA, pH 5.5 and the substrate was *D*-Val-Leu-Lys-AMC with a highest concentration of 100 μM. For cathepsin K, the buffer used was 100 mM MES/Tris, 1 mM EDTA, pH 7.0 and the substrate was *D*-Ala-Leu-Lys-AMC with a highest concentration of 250 μM.

Determination of cathepsin K proteolytic catalytic activity

Convenient assays for cathepsin K arere carried out using human recombinant enzyme. Standard assay conditions for the determination of kinetic constants used a fluorogenic peptide substrate, typically H-*D*-Ala-Leu-Lys-AMC, and were determined in either 100 mM Mes/Tris, pH 7.0 containing 1 mM EDTA and 10 mM 2-mercaptoethanol or 100 mM Na acetate, pH 5.5 containing 5 mM EDTA and 20 mM cysteine. The enzyme concentration used was 5 nM. The stock substrate solution was prepared at 10 mM in DMSO. Screens were carried out at a fixed substrate concentration of 60 μM and detailed kinetic studies with doubling dilutions of substrate from 250 μM. The total DMSO concentration in the assay was kept below 3%. All assays were conducted at ambient temperature. Product fluorescence (excitation at 390 nm, emission at 460 nm) was monitored with a Labsystems Fluoroskan Ascent fluorescent plate reader. Product progress curves were generated over 15 minutes following generation of AMC product.

Inhibition Studies

Potential inhibitors are screened using the above assay with variable concentrations of test compound. Reactions were initiated by addition of enzyme to buffered solutions of substrate and inhibitor. K_i values were calculated according to equation 1

$$v_0 = \frac{VS}{K_M\left(1+\frac{I}{K_i}\right)+S} \qquad (1)$$

where v_0 is the velocity of the reaction, V is the maximal velocity, S is the concentration of substrate with Michaelis constant of K_M, and I is the concentration of inhibitor.

Determination of falcipain 2 proteolytic catalytic activity

Generation of Falcipain 2

Abbreviations

ORF, open reading frame; PCR, polymerase chain reaction;

Cloning

The deoxyoligonucleotide primers:
(SEQ ID NO.: 1) 5'CGCGGATCCGCCACCATGGAATTAAACAGATTTGCCGAT-3' and (SEQ ID NO.: 2) 5'CGCGTCGACTTAATGATGATGATGATGATGTTCAATTAATGGAATGAATGCATCAGT-3' were designed based on sequences deposited at the Sanger Centre, Cambridge, UK (http://www.sanger.ac.uk/Projects/P_falciparum/blast_server.shtml). These primers were designed to amplify a portion of the cDNA sequence of the cysteinyl proteinase now known as Falcipain 2 and to include relevant terminal cloning enzymes sites and a carboxy-terminal hexahistidine coding sequence immediately upstream of the stop codon.

Polymerase chain reaction was performed with the above primers and *Plasmodium falciparum* phage library DNA as a template using the following conditions; 94°C for 2 minutes then 35 cycles of 94°C for 10 seconds, 50°C for 1 minute, and 60°C for 2 minutes, this was followed by a 60°C 5 minute incubation. The 880bp PCR amplicon was purified and phosphorylated using T4 polynucleotide kinase. This DNA was then ligated into EcoRV cleaved, dephosphorylated Bluescript II cloning vector and transformed into DH5 alpha *E.coli*. The DNA sequence of the plasmid inserts in isolated recombinant *E.coli* clones were determined using an Amersham Megabace sequencing instrument. To create an authentic ORF a three-way ligation was conducted bringing together the N-terminus of truncated falcipain-2 (NcoI/NdeI), the C-terminus of falcipain-2 (NdeI/BamH1) and the vector pQE-60 (NcoI/BamHI).

Nucleotide Sequence of TF2.10 (SEQ ID NO.: 3):

CCATGGAATTAAACAGATTTGCCGATTTAACTTATCATGAATTTAAAAACA
AATATCTTAGTTTAAGATCTTCAAAACCATTAAAGAATTCTAAATATTTATT

AGATCAAATGAATTATGAAGAAGTTATAAAAAAATATAGAGGAGAAGAAA
ATTTCGATCATGCAGCTTACGACTGGAGATTACACAGTGGTGTAACACCTG
TAAAGGATCAAAAAAATTGTGGATCTTGCTGGGCCTTTAGTAGTATAGGTT
CCGTAGAATCACAATATGCTATCAGAAAAAATAAATTAATAACCTTAAGTG
AACAAGAATTAGTAGATTGTTCATTTAAAAATTATGGTTGTAATGGAGGTC
TCATTAATAATGCCTTTGAGGATATGATTGAACTTGGAGGTATATGTCCAG
ATGGTGATTATCCATATGTGAGTGATGCTCCAAATTTATGTAACATAGATA
GATGTACTGAAAAATATGGAATCAAAAATTATTTATCCGTACCAGATAATA
AATTAAAAGAAGCACTTAGATTCTTGGGACCTATTAGTATTAGTGTAGCCG
TATCAGATGATTTTGCTTTTTACAAAGAAGGTATTTTCGATGGAGAATGTG
GTGATGAATTAAATCATGCCGTTATGCTTGTAGGTTTTGGTATGAAAGAAA
TTGTTAATCCATTAACCAAGAAAGGAGAAAAACATTATTATTATATAATTA
AGAACTCATGGGGACAACAATGGGGAGAAAGAGGTTTCATAAATATTGAA
ACAGATGAATCAGGATTAATGAGAAAATGTGGATTAGGTACTGATGCATTC
ATTCCATTAATTGAACATCATCATCATCATCATTAAGTCGACGCGATCGAA
TTCCTGCAGCCCGGGGATCC

Coding for the Protein Sequence (SEQ ID NO.: 4):

MELNRFADLTYHEFKNKYLSLRSSKPLKNSKYLLDQMNYEEVIKKYRGEENFD
HAAYDWRLHSGVTPVKDQKNCGSCWAFSSIGSVESQYAIRKNKLITLSEQELV
DCSFKNYGCNGGLINNAFEDMIELGGICPDGDYPYVSDAPNLCNIDRCTEKYGI
KNYLSVPDNKLKEALRFLGPISISVAVSDDFAFYKEGIFDGECGDELNHAVMLV
GFGMKEIVNPLTKKGEKHYYYIIKNSWGQQWGERGFINIETDESGLMRKCGLG
TDAFIPLIEHHHHHH.

The TF2.10 insert was excised from the pQE-60 vector using the restriction enzymes NcoI and BamHI, ligated into NcoI/BamHI cut expression vector pET-11D and transformed into DH5 alpha *E.coli*. The presence of a recombinant expression plasmid (pET-TF2.10) in an isolated *E.coli* colony was confirmed by restriction enzyme digest

of plasmid DNA. BL21(DE3) *E.coli* were transformed with pET-TF2.10 and used for expression of the recombinant cysteinyl proteinase.

Protein Expression

pET-TF2.10-Transformed BL21(DE3) *E.coli* (BLTF2.10) were grown up overnight at 200 rpm, 37°C in Luria broth containing 100 μg/ml ampicillin. Fresh medium was then inoculated and grown to an OD_{600nm} of 0.8 before protein expression was induced using 1 mM IPTG. Induction was performed for 3 hours at 200 rpm, 37°C then the bacterial cells harvested by centrifugation and stored at –80°C until protein purification performed.

Protein Purification and Refolding

An *E.coli* cell pellet equivalent to 250ml culture was lysed by resuspension in solubilisation buffer (6M guanidine hydrochloride, 20mM Tris-HCl, 250mM NaCl, 20mM imidazole, pH8.0) for 30 minutes at room temperature. After centrifugation at 12000g for 10 minutes at 4°C the cleared lysate was applied to 1 ml nickel-NTA agarose, and agitated for 1 hour at room temperature.

Protein Refolding Method 1

The protein bound to nickel-NTA was batch washed with 6M guanidine hydrochloride, 20mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.o, 250mM NaCl then 8M urea, Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 500mM NaCl then 8M urea, Tris-HCl, pH 8.0 including 30 mM imidazole and protein elution performed using 8M urea, Tris-HCl, pH 8.0 with 1 M imidazole. The eluted protein was then diluted 100 fold in refolding buffer (100mM Tris-HCl, 1mM EDTA, 20% glycerol, 250mM L-arginine, 1mM reduced glutathione, 0.1mM oxidised glutatione, pH8.0) and left stirring overnight at 4°C. The protein could then be concentrated either by filter centrifugation or repurification using a nickel-agarose column (after dialysis to remove the EDTA).

Protein Refolding Method 2

The protein bound to nickel-NTA was batch washed with 8M urea, Tris-HCl, 500mM NaCl, pH 8.0 then 8M urea, Tris-HCl, pH 8.0 including 20 mM imidazole, then 2M urea, Tris-HCl, pH 8.0. The protein was then refolded on the column by the addition of 100mM Tris-HCl, pH8.0, 250mM L-arginine, 1mM reduced glutathione, 0.1mM oxidised glutatione with incubation at 4°C and protein elution performed using, 100mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0 with 0.5 M imidazole.

Immediately active (mature) proteinase was obtained using protein refolding method 1 and concentrating the dilute refolded enzyme by filter centrifugation.This method, however, did result in a large degree of enzyme loss due to autoproteolysis. Both concentrating the protein refolded using method 1 by nickel column purification and using refolding method 2 resulted in greater recovery of the enzyme in its stable inactive pro-form. The pro-form could also be used to generate mature active falcipain 2, after incubation at 37°C.

Convenient assays for falcipain 2 are carried out using the above recombinant enzyme. Alternatively assays employ the techniques described in Sijwali et al Prot Exp Purif 22 128-134 (2001). Standard assay conditions for the determination of kinetic constants used a fluorogenic peptide substrate, typically Boc-Val-Leu-Lys-AMC, and were determined in either 100 mM Mes/Tris/acetate, pH 7.0 containing 1 M NaCl and 10 mM 2-mercaptoethanol or 100 mM Na phosphate, pH 5.5 containing 1 M NaCl and 10 mM 2-mercaptoethanol. The enzyme concentration used was 2 nM. The stock substrate solution was prepared at 10 mM in DMSO. Screens were carried out at a fixed substrate concentration of 80 μM and detailed kinetic studies with doubling dilutions of substrate from 250 μM. The total DMSO concentration in the assay was kept below 3%. All assays were conducted at ambient temperature. Product fluorescence (excitation at 390 nm, emission at 460 nm) was monitored with a Labsystems Fluoroskan Ascent fluorescent plate reader. Product progress curves were generated over 15 minutes following generation of AMC product.

Inhibition Studies

Potential inhibitors were screened using the above assay with variable concentrations of test compound. Reactions were initiated by addition of enzyme to buffered solutions of substrate and inhibitor. K_i values were calculated according to equation 1

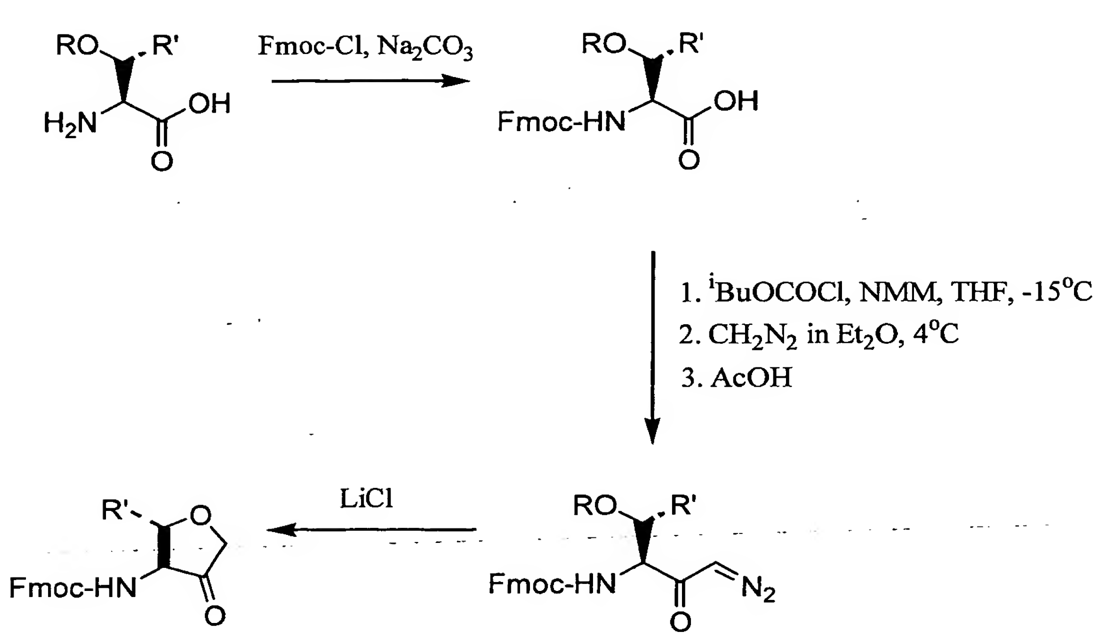
$$v_0 = \frac{VS}{K_M\left(1+\frac{I}{K_i}\right)+S} \tag{1}$$

where v_0 is the velocity of the reaction, V is the maximal velocity, S is the concentration of substrate with Michaelis constant of K_M, and I is the concentration of inhibitor.

The compounds indicated in table 3 below were prepared on solid phase as described above and showed Ki values for falcipain 2 at pH 7 in the range 0.5 μM to 3 μM, suggesting utility in the prophylaxis or treatment of malaria or Plasmodium infestation.

Table 3

Compound
4-Dimethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3S-enyl]-benzamide
4-Diethylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide
4-Methylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide
4-Methylamino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide
4-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide
4-Amino-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-but-3-enyl]-benzamide
N-[3-Methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-4-propylamino-benzamide
3-Hydroxy-*N*-[3-methyl-1S-(2R-methyl-4-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3S-ylcarbamoyl)-butyl]-benzamide

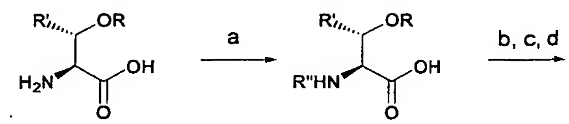


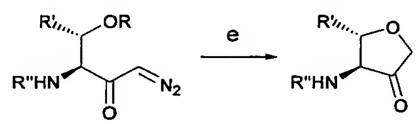
(18, 24-28)

Where R= H or Bu^t and R' = R5 in general formula (II).

Scheme 1. Preparation of dihydro-2(3H)-5-alkyl furanone ring system.

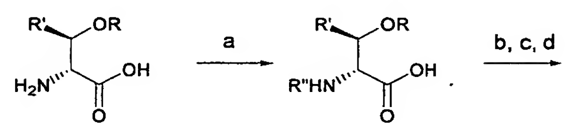
Scheme 1A

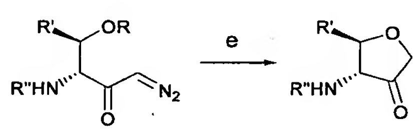




where
R = H or ^{t}Bu
R' = R5 in general formula (II)
R" = Boc or Fmoc

<u>18, 23</u>
where
R" = Fmoc
18 R' = Ethyl
23 R' = Methyl

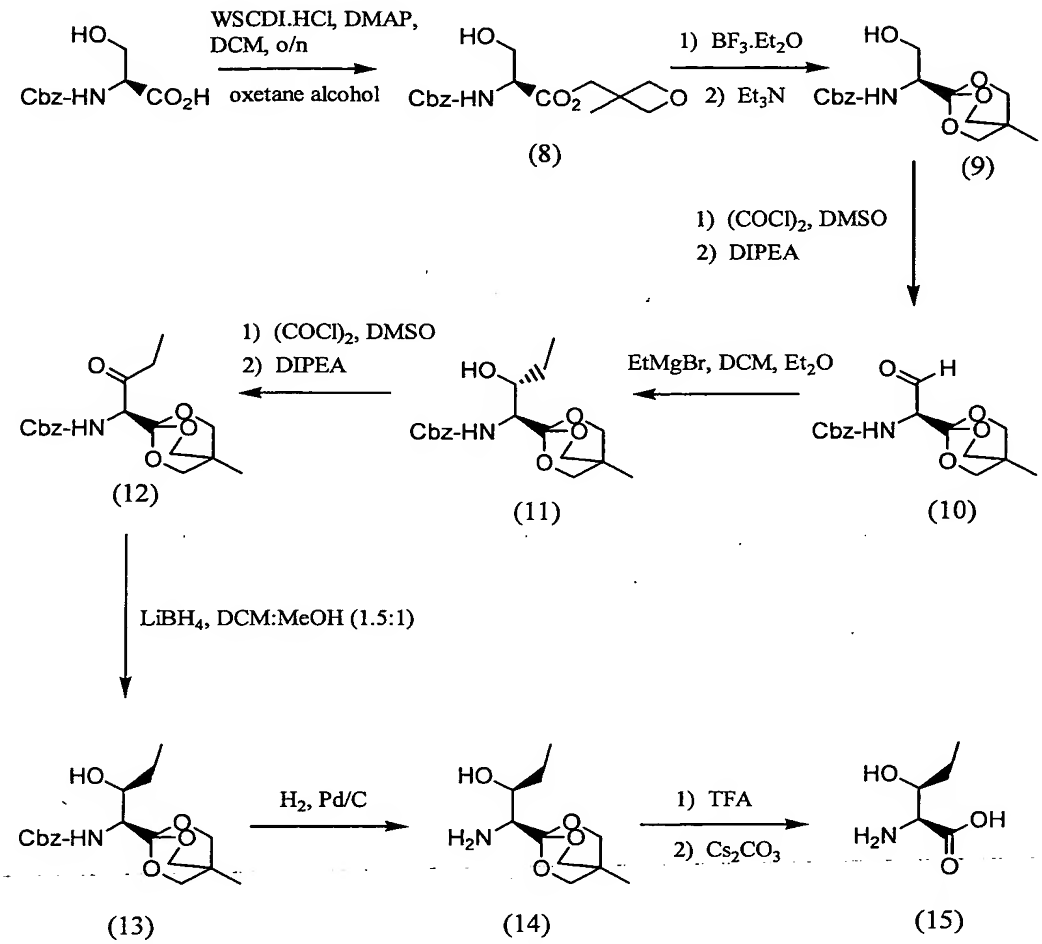




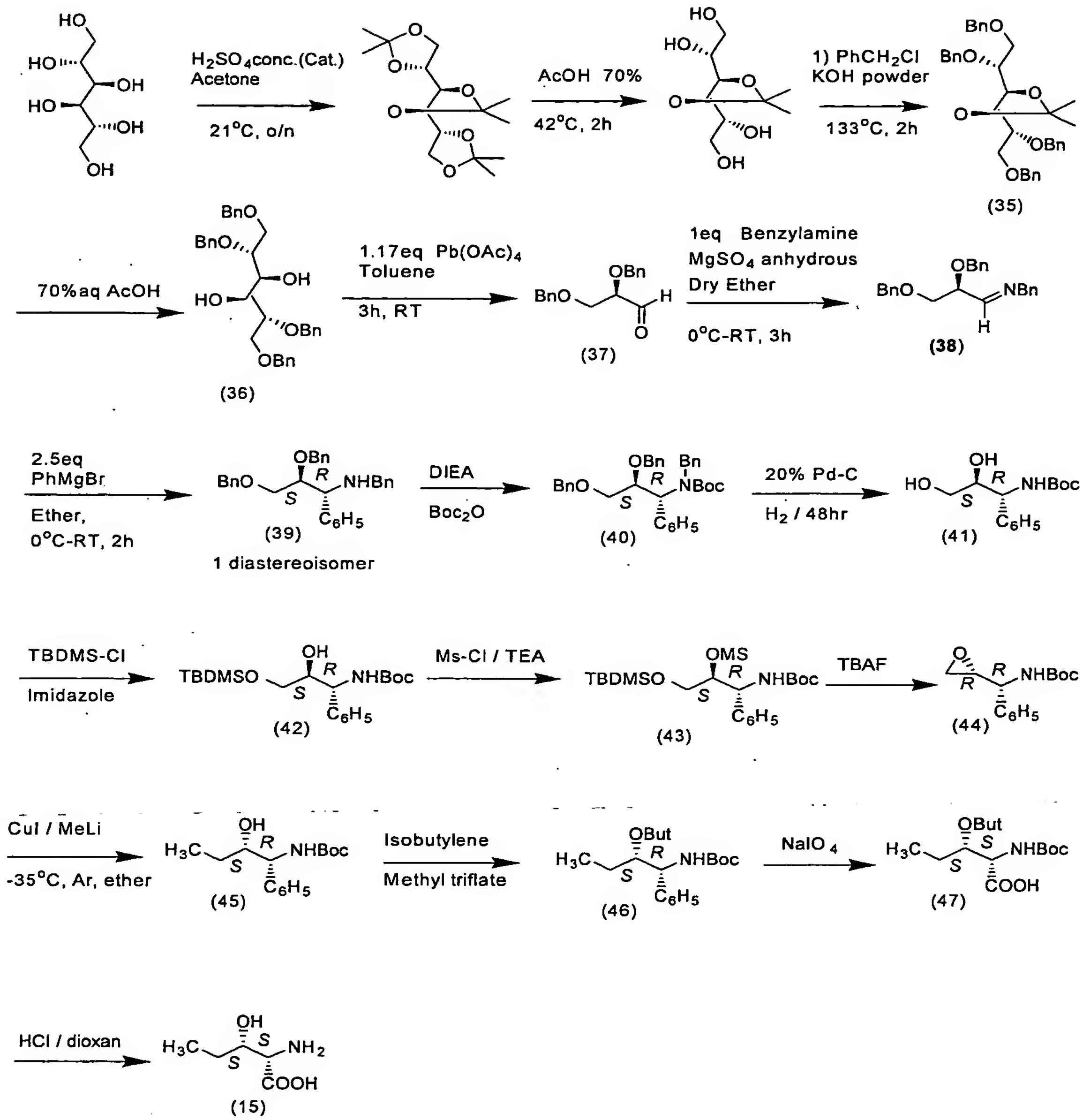
where
R = H or ^{t}Bu
R' = R5 in general formula (II)
R" = Boc or Fmoc

<u>22</u>
where
R" = Fmoc
22 R' = Methyl

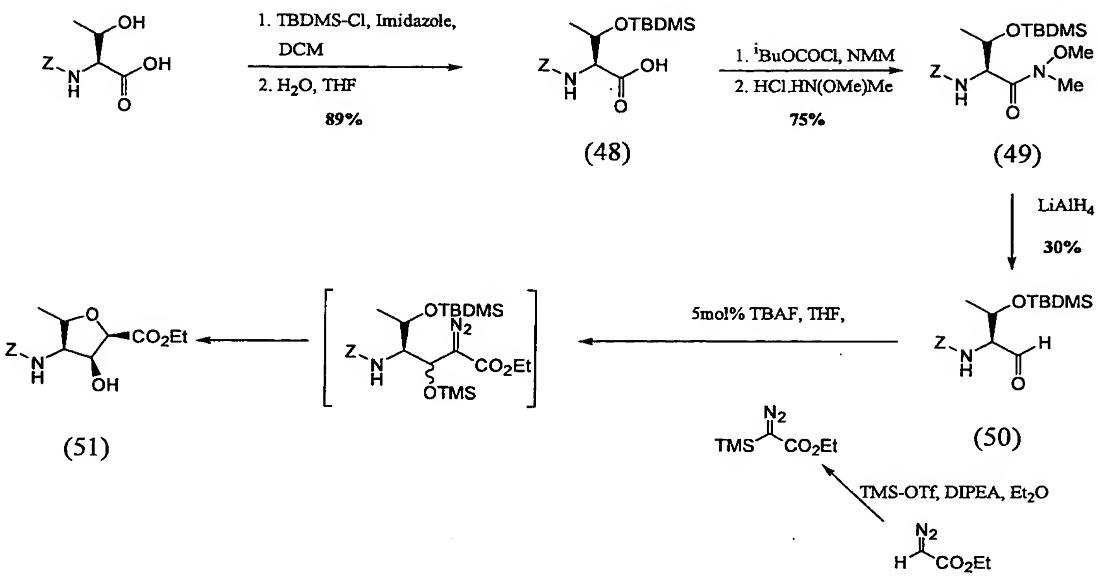
a) Fmoc-Cl, Na_2CO_3 or Boc_2O; b) ^{i}BuOCOCl, NMM, THF; c) CH_2N_2 in Et_2O; d) AcOH; e) LiCl in 80% AcOH



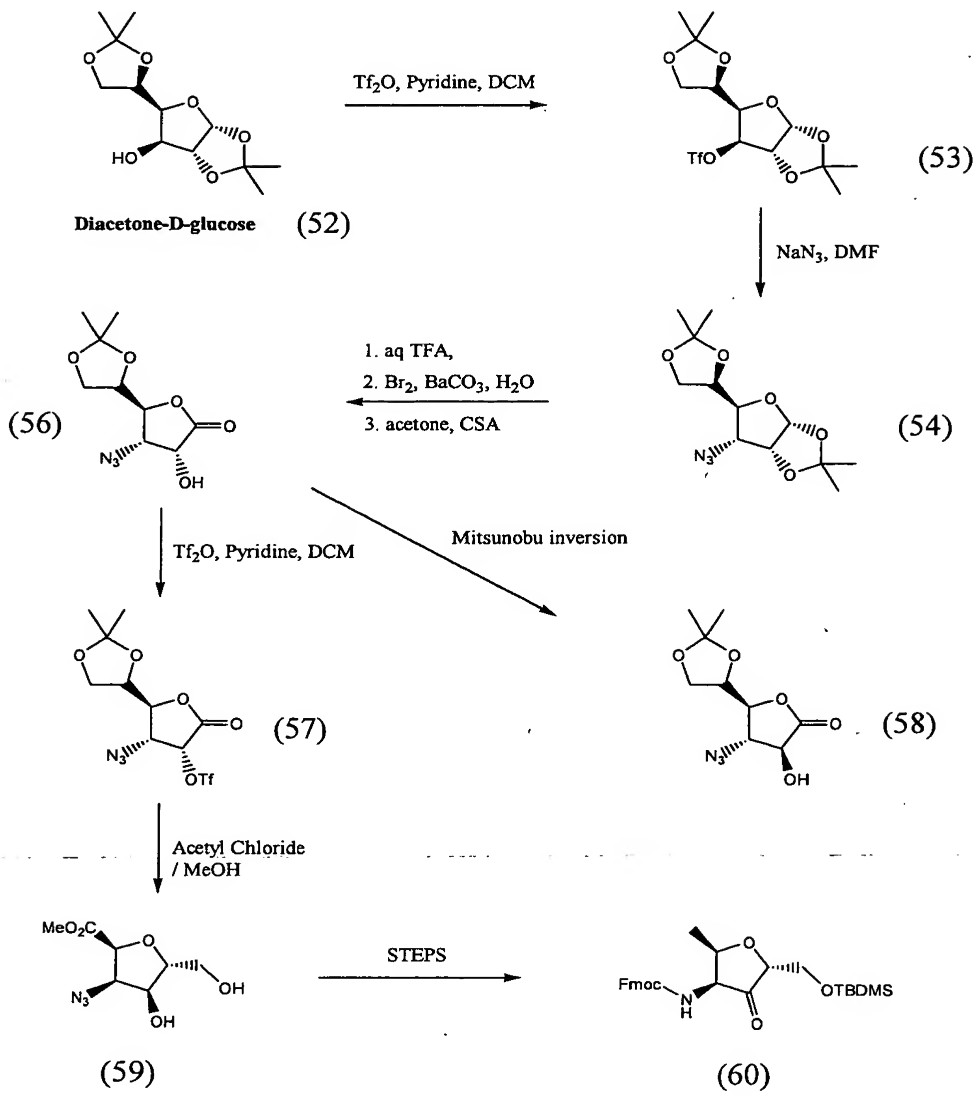
Scheme 2. Preparation of chiral β-alkylserine aminoacids, exemplified by (2S, 3S)-β-ethylserine **(15)**



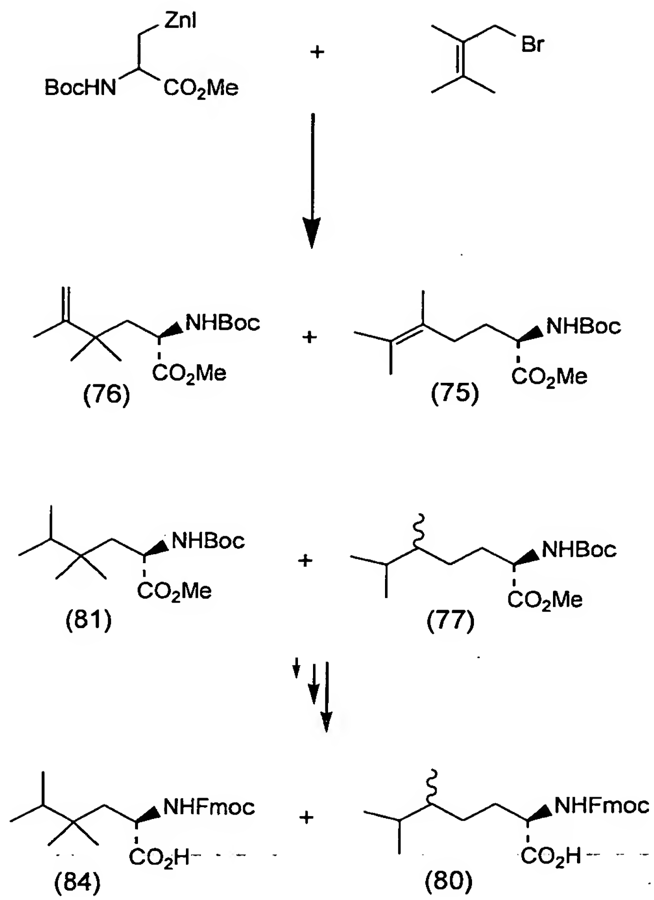
Scheme 3. Sugar route for the preparation of chiral β-alkylserine aminoacids, exemplified by (2S, 3S)-β-ethylserine (15)



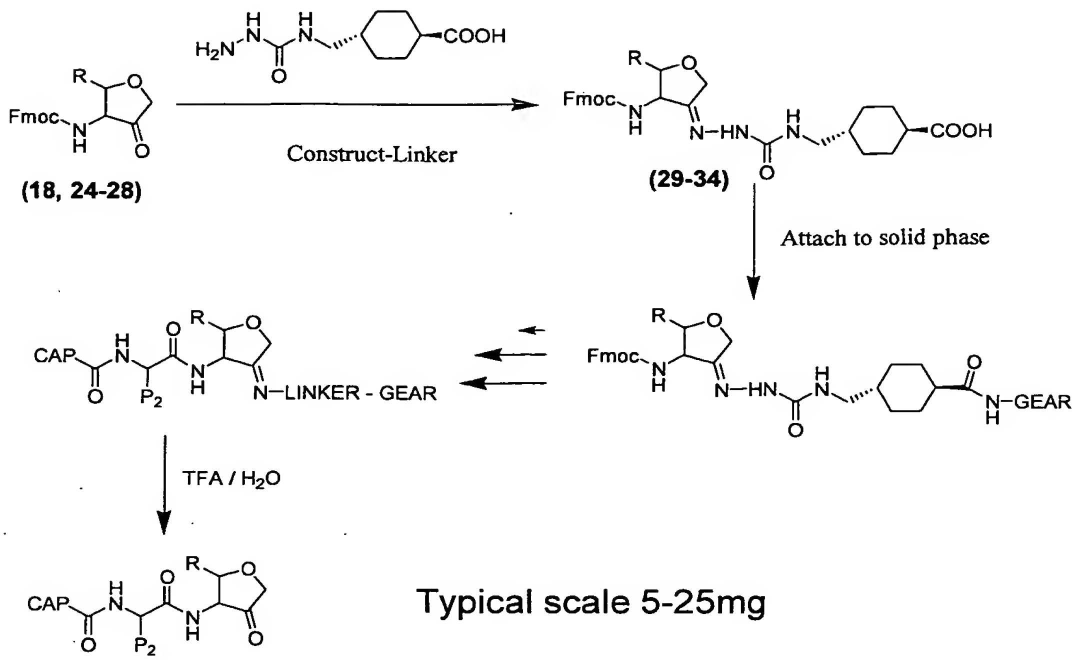
Scheme 4. 'Threonine type' chemistry route towards compounds of formula (II) containing R6 binding elements.



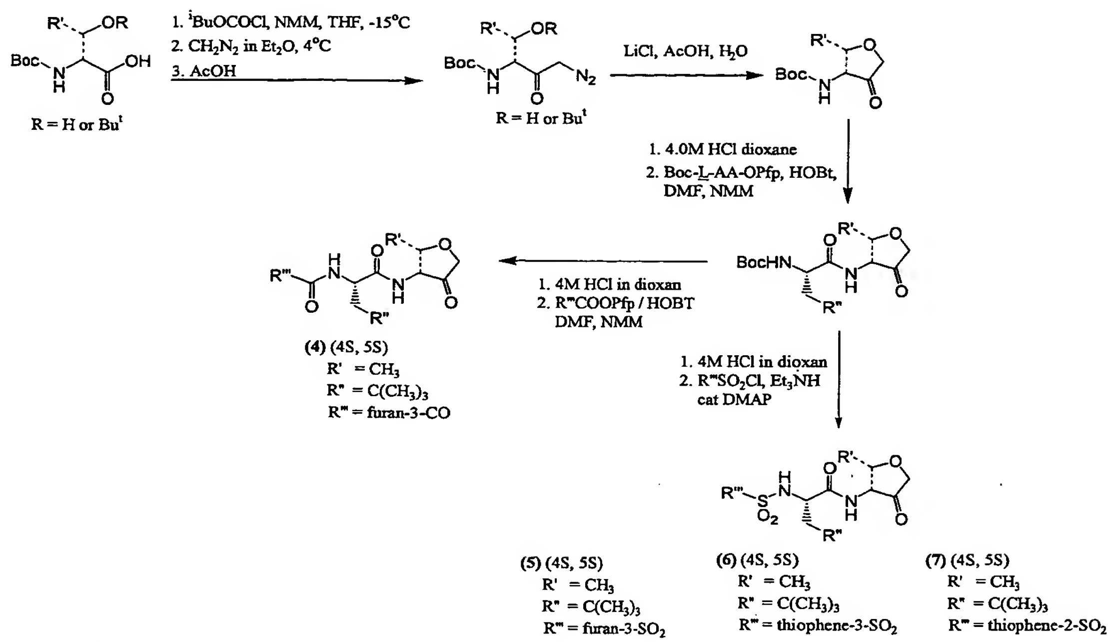
Scheme 5. Sugar chemistry route towards compounds of formula (II) containing R6 binding elements.



Scheme 6. Novel P2 hybrids by the CuCN catalysed cross coupling of Zn activated β-iodoalanine with allyl bromides (with permission from Dexter & Jackson ibid)



Scheme 7. Solid phase synthesis of dihydro-2(3H)-5-alkyl furanone inhibitors of cathepsin S.



Scheme 8. Solution phase preparation of 3(2H)-furanone inhibitors of cathepsin S.